

Unit 1 The Education I Received 1

- I. 教学时间分配 (Time Allocation) 1
- II. 教学目的与要求 (Aims and Requirements) 1
- III. 背景资料 (Background Information) 3
- IV. 语言点 (Language Points) 4
- V. 练习指导及补充练习
(Guide to Exercises and Supplementary Exercises) 10
- VI. 练习答案 (Key to Exercises) 15
- VII. 课文参考译文 (Text Translation for Reference) 17

Your Résumé 19 Unit 2

- I. 教学时间分配 (Time Allocation) 19
- II. 教学目的与要求 (Aims and Requirements) 19
- III. 背景资料 (Background Information) 21
- IV. 语言点 (Language Points) 22
- V. 练习指导及补充练习
(Guide to Exercises and Supplementary Exercises) 27
- VI. 练习答案 (Key to Exercises) 31
- VII. 课文参考译文 (Text Translation for Reference) 33

Unit 3 I Want to Further My Study Abroad 35

- I. 教学时间分配 (Time Allocation) 35
- II. 教学目的与要求 (Aims and Requirements) 35
- III. 背景资料 (Background Information) 37
- IV. 语言点 (Language Points) 38
- V. 练习指导及补充练习
(Guide to Exercises and Supplementary Exercises) 43
- VI. 练习答案 (Key to Exercises) 48
- VII. 课文参考译文 (Text Translation for Reference) 51

Unit 4 **Tourist Information** 53

- I. 教学时间分配 (Time Allocation) 53
- II. 教学目的与要求 (Aims and Requirements) 53
- III. 背景资料 (Background Information) 55
- IV. 语言点 (Language Points) 55
- V. 练习指导及补充练习
(Guide to Exercises and Supplementary Exercises) 63
- VI. 练习答案 (Key to Exercises) 68
- VII. 课文参考译文 (Text Translation for Reference) 70

Traveling in China (I) 73 **Unit 5**

- I. 教学时间分配 (Time Allocation) 73
- II. 教学目的与要求 (Aims and Requirements) 73
- III. 背景资料 (Background Information) 75
- IV. 语言点 (Language Points) 76
- V. 练习指导及补充练习
(Guide to Exercises and Supplementary Exercises) 87
- VI. 练习答案 (Key to Exercises) 92
- VII. 课文参考译文 (Text Translation for Reference) 95

Unit 6 **Traveling in China (II)** 97

- I. 教学时间分配 (Time Allocation) 97
- II. 教学目的与要求 (Aims and Requirements) 97
- III. 背景资料 (Background Information) 98
- IV. 语言点 (Language Points) 99
- V. 练习指导及补充练习
(Guide to Exercises and Supplementary Exercises) 107
- VI. 练习答案 (Key to Exercises) 112
- VII. 课文参考译文 (Text Translation for Reference) 114

Test 1 (Unit 1— Unit 6) 117

Unit 7 Welcome! 121

- I. 教学时间分配 (Time Allocation) 121
- II. 教学目的与要求 (Aims and Requirements) 121
- III. 背景资料 (Background Information) 123
- IV. 语言点 (Language Points) 123
- V. 练习指导及补充练习
(Guide to Exercises and Supplementary Exercises) 131
- VI. 练习答案 (Key to Exercises) 136
- VII. 课文参考译文 (Text Translation for Reference) 138

Help Yourself, Please. 141 Unit 8

- I. 教学时间分配 (Time Allocation) 141
- II. 教学目的与要求 (Aims and Requirements) 141
- III. 背景资料 (Background Information) 143
- IV. 语言点 (Language Points) 144
- V. 练习指导及补充练习
(Guide to Exercises and Supplementary Exercises) 151
- VI. 练习答案 (Key to Exercises) 156
- VII. 课文参考译文 (Text Translation for Reference) 158

Unit 9 An Invitation Card 161

- I. 教学时间分配 (Time Allocation) 161
- II. 教学目的与要求 (Aims and Requirements) 161
- III. 背景资料 (Background Information) 163
- IV. 语言点 (Language Points) 163
- V. 练习指导及补充练习
(Guide to Exercises and Supplementary Exercises) 169
- VI. 练习答案 (Key to Exercises) 176
- VII. 课文参考译文 (Text Translation for Reference) 179

Unit 10 Asking the Way Indoors 181

- I. 教学时间分配 (Time Allocation) 181
- II. 教学目的与要求 (Aims and Requirements) 181
- III. 背景资料 (Background Information) 183
- IV. 语言点 (Language Points) 183
- V. 练习指导及补充练习
(Guide to Exercises and Supplementary Exercises) 191
- VI. 练习答案 (Key to Exercises) 196
- VII. 课文参考译文 (Text Translation for Reference) 199

Asking the Way Outdoors 201 Unit 11

- I. 教学时间分配 (Time Allocation) 201
- II. 教学目的与要求 (Aims and Requirements) 201
- III. 背景资料 (Background Information) 202
- IV. 语言点 (Language Points) 203
- V. 练习指导及补充练习
(Guide to Exercises and Supplementary Exercises) 209
- VI. 练习答案 (Key to Exercises) 215
- VII. 课文参考译文 (Text Translation for Reference) 217

Unit 12 The Changes in My Hometown 219

- I. 教学时间分配 (Time Allocation) 219
- II. 教学目的与要求 (Aims and Requirements) 219
- III. 背景资料 (Background Information) 221
- IV. 语言点 (Language Points) 222
- V. 练习指导及补充练习
(Guide to Exercises and Supplementary Exercises) 230
- VI. 练习答案 (Key to Exercises) 233
- VII. 课文参考译文 (Text Translation for Reference) 236

Test 2 (Unit 7— Unit 12) 239

Unit

1

The Education I Received



I. 教学时间分配 (Time Allocation)

本单元共需4~5学时，对话1学时；课文A及练习2~3学时，课文B、语法等1学时（教师可根据本课内容的难易程度稍作增减）。Extra reading的目的为锻炼学生的独立阅读能力。教师宜在课上限时完成，可提出简短的问题让学生口头回答，书中的理解性练习可留给学生自己课后完成。



II. 教学目的与要求 (Aims and Requirements)

I 内容重点 (Language Focus)

1. 交际重点 (Communicative Focus)

与他人谈论彼此的教育情况，包括受教育的时间、地点、程度及所学专业、课程；学校概况，如它的历史、学生的数量、类别、住宿情况，以及对学校的印象等。

2. 重点训练单词和词组 (Focal Words and Expressions)

act, course, education, fair, graduate, patient, protest against, receive, refuse, solve, sympathy,

tend, take a course, graduate from, no point in doing something, have a chance to do, found a university, do one's degree in, enjoy one's time, go on strike, give (private) lessons to, pass one's exam, be good at doing something, offer to do something, pay somebody for something, feel sympathy for

3. 重点句型和习惯表达法 (Focal Functions and Patterns)

- A. When/Where/How long to receive the education; When/Where to graduate from which school/university?
- 1) What university did you go to? (I went to ... University)
 - 2) What university did you graduate from? (I graduated from ... University)
 - 3) When did you graduate from the university? (I graduated in ...)
- B. What courses/degree to take/what to major in/what exams to take/pass?
- 1) What was your major? (My major was ...)
 - 2) What did you major in? (I majored in ...)
 - 3) What degree are you doing at the university? (I'm doing ...)
 - 4) What course(s) did you take? (I took ...)
 - 5) Which was your favorite subject? (English was my favorite subject.)
 - 6) What kinds of exams were given? (There were written exams, oral exams ...)
 - 7) Did you take the TOEFL (托福) test? (Yes, I did./No, I didn't.)
- C. The history, the size and the impression of the university:
- 1) How old is the university?
 - 2) When was it founded?
 - 3) How many students are there in the university?
 - 4) Do the students live in the university dorms?
 - 5) Does the university provide meals?
 - 6) Did you enjoy your time in the university?

II 技能要求 (Skills Development)

1 听说 (Listening and Speaking)

要求学生能熟读对话与课文，背诵课文对话语句；要求学生能听懂教师的问题并且能用英语简要回答。

2 读译 (Reading and Translating)

要求学生能读懂简短的有关接受教育方面的英语文章以获取必要的信息，并能回答相关的阅读理解问题；训练学生英汉互译包含重点词语或结构的句子，培养学生的英语表达能力。

3 写 (Applied Writing)

A. 鼓励学生用学过的单词、词组与结构表述自己受教育的经历。

Sample: In 2009, I went to an adult college. I majored in English because

I liked it very much. At school, most of my classmates talked with me in English and we often played English games in class. Although we could not do them very well at first, our teachers were patient with us and helped us a lot. They expected us to have a chance to succeed in the future. After two years of working at my courses, I graduated from the college with good results. I always remember what our teachers told us: "There is no point in simply complaining about the difficulties you meet with. What you should do is to overcome them."

B. 了解学历、证书等毕业文凭的英文基本写作格式。



III. 背景资料 (Background Information)

1 耶鲁大学 (Yale University)

Established in 1701 as the Collegiate School, Yale University is a private liberal arts coeducational institution in New Haven, Connecticut. It is a member of the Ivy League. In addition to the undergraduate Yale College, there are schools of medicine, divinity, law, art, architecture, music, forestry and environmental studies, nursing, organization and management, and drama and a graduate school of arts and sciences. Yale awarded the first American Ph.D. in 1861. Notable facilities at Yale are the Beinecke Rare Book and Manuscript Library, the Peabody Museum of Natural History, a radio station, a planetarium, an art gallery, the Center for British Art and British Studies, and the Institute of Far Eastern Languages. Undergraduate students live in 12 residential colleges, each with its own living, dining, and library facilities.

2 学位 (Degrees)

硕士学位Master介于博士学位Doctor与学士学位Bachelor之间。MA是文学硕士学位Master of Arts的缩写，注意用an MA来表示单数。

在查阅美国学校的资料时，每所学校都提供该大学授予的学位类型，分别用英语字母表示如下：

A	— Associate	准学士学位
B	— Bachelor	学士学位
M	— Master	硕士学位
D	— Doctor	博士学位

此外，在英语中常用缩写来表示各种学位，如：

BA	— Bachelor of Arts	文学士
----	--------------------	-----

BS	— Bachelor of Science	理学士
MA	— Master of Arts	文学硕士
MS	— Master of Science	理学硕士
MEd	— Master of Education	教育学硕士
MBA	— Master of Business Administration	工商管理硕士



IV. 语言点 (Language Points)

1 课文补充注释 (Notes to Dialogues and Passage A)

1. **college/university**: 在美国college可指单科学校, 如a medical college; 而university则指综合大学, 综合大学下设的学院也称college。英国英语中college还可表示综合大学下设的分校。

2. **I did an MA in philosophy.**

我读的是哲学硕士。

其中did意为“学习, 研究…学问”。

e.g. She does biology at a university.

她在大学学生物。

Mr. Smith does an MBA at Yale University.

史密斯先生在耶鲁大学攻读工商管理硕士。

3. **She enjoyed solving problems.**

她喜欢解题。

句中宾语为动名词形式。有些动词如avoid, finish, stop, mind, can't help, require, admit, miss, delay等, 其后宾语如果是动词, 则该动词需用其动名词形式。

e.g. She enjoys listening to pop music.

她喜欢听流行音乐。

Tom enjoys eating but not cooking.

汤姆喜欢吃但不喜欢做。

4. **But most of her friends tended to find math very difficult.**

但她的大多数朋友都觉得数学很难学。

动词find后的结构为复合宾语, 这一结构很常用。其中第一部分是宾语; 第二部分是宾语补足语, 它表示宾语的状态、身份、特性或行为等, 其结构如下:

名词

形容词

介词结构

find + 名词/代词 + 现在分词 They found

过去分词

动词不定式

her a suitable person for it.
 the story very interesting.
 everything in good order.
 her working at the lab.
 the room crowded with people.
 the book to be interesting.

5. During Caroline's last year at school, the teachers went on strike for two months ...

卡罗琳上学的最后一年，教师们举行了为期两个月的罢工。

句中的词组go on strike的解释为go out on strike。动词go相当于系动词be，该词组相当于be out on strike。

6. Caroline gave private math lessons to three of her friends, so that they would have a chance of passing their examination.

卡罗琳就给她的三个朋友单独上数学课，这样他们就有可能通过考试了。

句中so that引导目的状语从句，意为“以便于，为了”；它与so that引导的结果状语从句区别如下：在目的状语从句中常用can, may, could, might等情态动词；在表示结果状语从句的结构中so修饰形容词或副词。

e.g. We left early so that we could catch the first train.

为了赶早班火车，我们走得很早。

It's so cold that the water in the river has frozen.

天太冷，河水都结冰了。

III 词汇用法 (Word Usage)

course *n.* a set of lessons or studies 课程

take a course 选修课程，学习课程

give a course 教授课程

e.g. She has taken a course in economics this term.

这学期她选修了一门经济学课程。

Li Hua takes an English course in an evening school to improve her English.

为了提高英语水平，李华在一所夜校学英语。

Professor Smith gave us a course of Business English last term.

上学期史密斯教授给我们上商务英语课。

education *n.* the process by which a person's mind and character are developed through formal instruction at a school 教育

e.g. Parents should pay attention to their children's education.

父母应该重视子女的教育。

Adult education is very important.

成人教育十分重要。

educate *v.* to teach or train, esp. through formal instruction at a school or college 教育

e.g. It is a difficult thing to educate children.

教育孩子不是一件容易的事。

He was born in China but was educated in America.

他出生在中国，但在美国受的教育。

educational *a.* of or for education 教育的

e.g. The American educational system is different from ours.

美国的教育制度与我国的不同。

You should fill in the form with your educational experience.

你应该在表中填上你的学历。

fair *a.* free from injustice, dishonesty, or self-interest 公平的，公正的，合理的

e.g. That man has a strong sense of fair play.

那人有着很强的公平竞争意识。

Our teacher isn't fair, and he always gives the highest marks to his favorites.

我们老师不公平，总是给他喜欢的学生打高分。

Antonym: **unfair** *a.* not reasonable 不公平的，不公正的

e.g. He received an unfair treatment.

他受到了不公正的待遇。

It's unfair that the whole class should be punished because of you.

真不公平，因你而让全班挨罚。

favorite *a.* most loved 最喜欢的

e.g. Liz is her mother's favorite daughter.

莉兹是她妈妈最喜欢的女儿。

What is your favorite sport? Is it football?

你最喜欢的运动是什么？是足球吗？

graduate *v.* (BrE) to obtain a degree at a university
(AmE) to complete an educational course 毕业

graduate from 毕业于

n. a person who has completed a course of study at a school or college and has received a degree or diploma 大学毕业生；(美)毕业生

e.g. She graduated from Oxford with a first degree in physics.

她毕业于牛津大学，获得了物理学学士学位。

What university did you graduate from?

你毕业于哪所大学？

Robert is a graduate in medicine.

罗伯特是医科大学的毕业生。

Caroline is a graduate from Cambridge University.

卡罗琳是剑桥大学的毕业生。

method *n.* a planned way of doing something 方式, 方法

e.g. We enjoy Mr. Wang's class because of his excellent teaching methods.

我们喜欢上王老师的课, 因为他的教学方法特别好。

Mary solved these math problems with a different method.

玛丽用一种不同的方法解出了这些数学题。

Synonym: **way** *n.* a manner of doing something 方法

e.g. There are a lot of ways to learn English.

学习英语的方法很多。

Do this in your own way.

用自己的方式做这件事。

patient *a.* (with) able to accept a long wait or trouble without complaining 耐心的

n. a person who receives medical attention, care, or treatment, esp. in a hospital 病人

e.g. Jack is a patient doctor.

杰克是一个耐心的医生。

Be patient with your old mother — she is going deaf.

对你老妈耐心点, 她有点儿耳背。

How many patients does a practitioner normally have on his or her list?

门诊医生通常接待多少病人?

Antonym: **impatient** *a.* showing unwillingness to accept others' weakness 不耐烦的, 不耐烦的

e.g. Don't be impatient.

别不耐烦。

He is very impatient with his wife's complaints.

他对他妻子的唠叨很不耐烦。

patience *n.* the ability to wait for a long time without being angry, the ability to accept pain without losing one's self-control 耐心

e.g. The shop assistant has patience to answer customers' questions.

这位售货员耐心回答顾客的提问。

The teacher had no patience with the less intelligent students.

那位教师对后进生毫无耐心。

popular *a.* (with) liked by many people 受欢迎的, 喜爱的

e.g. The young singer is popular with young people.

这位青年歌手很受年轻人的欢迎。

The film *Titanic* is popular with Chinese people.

影片《泰坦尼克号》受到中国人的欢迎。

Antonym: **unpopular** *a.* not liked by many people 不受欢迎的

e.g. This old-fashioned computer is unpopular with modern young people.

这种旧式的电脑不受现代年轻人的欢迎。

The decision is unpopular with everyone.

这项决定不受大家的欢迎。

private *a.* personal, secret, not shared with others 私人的, 个人的

e.g. It's not a hotel; it's a private house.

这不是旅店, 这是私人住宅。

Yale University is a private university.

耶鲁大学是一所私立大学。

Antonym: **public** *a.* for the use by everyone 公开的, 公众的

e.g. Do not smoke in the public places, please.

在公共场所请不要吸烟。

He works in a public library.

他在一所公共图书馆工作。

Synonym: **personal** *a.* belonging to a particular person 个人的

e.g. I'd like to speak to Mr. Davis about a personal matter.

我想跟戴维斯先生谈一件私人的事情。

A personal letter should not be opened without permission.

私人信件未经许可不准打开。

protest *v.* (against/about) to express one's disagreement, feeling of unfairness 抗议

e.g. The residents protested against the noise and dust from the construction site.

居民抗议建筑工地的噪音和尘土。

Peter protests that he is treated as a stupid student.

彼得抗议把他看作笨学生。

receive *v.* to take or acquire; to hear or see (information) 接收, 收到

e.g. The club has received many new members.

这个俱乐部接纳了很多新成员。

Did you receive any letters today?

你今天收到信了吗?

The new teaching method received great acclaim.

这种新的教学方法备受赞扬。

refuse *v.* to show one's strong unwillingness to accept 拒绝

e.g. He refused that badly paid job.

他拒绝了那份低薪的工作。

Their application for visas was refused.

他们的签证申请没有获得批准。

Antonym: **accept** *v.* to take or receive (something offered or given), esp. willingly 接受

e.g. More and more people are ready to accept new things.

越来越多的人愿意接受新事物。

She accepted his invitation to the party.

她接受了他的邀请去参加聚会。

Synonym: **decline** *v.* to refuse (a request), usu. politely 谢绝

e.g. We asked them to come to our party, but they declined.

我们请他们参加聚会，但他们谢绝了。

Hospitals decline any visits to the patients in the morning.

医院上午谢绝探视病人。

solve *v.* to find a way of dealing with something 解决

e.g. Try to solve the problems by yourself.

尽量自己解决问题。

The helpless student went to his teacher for help to solve the problem.

无助的学生去找老师帮助解决问题。

solution *n.* (to + *n.*) an answer to a difficulty 解决方法

e.g. He found the solution to the problem.

他找到了问题的解决方法。

We bought a second-hand car; it was the solution to all our problems.

我们买了一辆旧车，它解决了我们所有的问题。

sympathy *n.* (for) sensitivity to and understanding of the suffering of other people often expressed in a willingness to give help 同情

e.g. The president expressed sympathy for the victims of the disaster.

总统对遭受灾难的受害者表示同情。

Thank you for your kind sympathy.

十分感谢你的同情。

sympathetic *a.* showing sympathy or approval 有同情心的；赞同的

e.g. We were very sympathetic when he failed in the game.

他比赛失败时我们对十分同情。

They were sympathetic to our proposals.

他们赞同我们的提议。

sympathize *v.* (with) show sympathy or approval 同情；赞同

e.g. We should sympathize with the disabled.

我们应该同情残疾人。

My mother sympathized with my plan to be a doctor.

我母亲赞同我当医生的计划。

tend *v.* 1) have the care of; look after; apply one's attention 照料，照管；注意，关心

2) have the tendency or inclination 倾向于，有…的趋势

e.g. She works as a volunteer to tend the old.

她以一个志愿者的身份去照料老人。

People under stress tend to feel tired and nervous.

处于压力下的人容易感到疲倦和紧张。

Soon their ship tended northward.

很快他们的船就驶向北面。

useless *a.* bringing no help or advantage 无用的

e.g. Never buy those useless things.

别买那些没用的东西。

A car is useless without gas.

汽车没有油就没用。

Antonym: **useful** *a.* bringing help 有益的, 有用的

e.g. It is a useful piece of advice.

这是一项有益的建议。

This book is useful for young students.

这本书对年轻学生有益。

no point in (doing) ... 做某事无意义

e.g. There is no point in further arguing with him.

继续与他争论下去没有任何意义。

He does not see any point in studying.

他一点也不明白学习的意义。

have a chance (of doing sth./to do sth.) 有机会

e.g. She has a chance of studying abroad.

她有一次出国学习的机会。

We have no chance to speak to her.

我们没有机会和她说话。



V. 练习指导及补充练习 (Guide to Exercises and Supplementary Exercises)

1. Check your understanding 的目的为检验学生对有关对话及短文的理解, 教师应注意引导学生用自己的语言回答, 并围绕这些练习就对话与课文的内容及词汇、句型等的用法进行口头训练, 不要把它们只作为理解练习使用。

补充练习如下:

For Dialogue A

Answer the following questions briefly according to Dialogue A.

- 1) Where did Dylan receive his education? (At Yale University.)
- 2) What program did he take? (An MA course in philosophy.)

- 3) What degree did he get when he graduated from Yale University? (A Master's Degree.)
- 4) How long did he stay in Yale University? (Four years.)
- 5) When did he leave there? (In 2008.)
- 6) Then where did he go? (To Germany.)
- 7) What did he do in Germany? (To teach a group of college students.)
- 8) When did he leave Germany? (About in 2009.)

For Dialogue B

Answer the following questions briefly according to Dialogue B.

- 1) Where did Liu Lin graduate from? (North University.)
- 2) When was her university founded? (In 1947.)
- 3) How many students are/were there in the university? (Over 29 000.)
- 4) What degrees did the foreign students do? (The first degrees and the Master's degrees.)
- 5) Where did she live? (In the dormitory.)
- 6) How did she enjoy her time there? (Very much.)

For Passage A

Answer the following questions briefly according to Passage A.

- 1) Who is the passage about? (Caroline and her friends.)
- 2) What did Caroline like to do? (To study math and to solve problems.)
- 3) What did her friends think of math? (Difficult and useless.)
- 4) Why did the teachers go on strike? (For the size of their classes.)
- 5) What did she do during that time? (She gave private lessons to her friends.)
- 6) Why could she do that? (She was patient and good at explaining things.)
- 7) Why did her friends want to thank her? (Because they passed their exam.)
- 8) Did she accept their offer? (No, she refused the offer.)

2. Learn to communicate 的目的为巩固并扩展本课所学“关于介绍个人所受教育”的句型。教师在指导学生完成练习4~6时, 还可围绕下列方面帮助学生归纳常用词语和句型: 上什么大学、学制、所学课程、所学专业、考试与考试成绩、学位、学习和生活条件、对学校生活的看法、毕业时间、毕业后的工作等。

The school/university you graduated from

- 1) I attended No. 1 Middle School in Beijing from 2006 to 2009.
- 2) I went to Yale University in 2006.
- 3) I got my higher education in the USA from 2005 to 2009.
- 4) I left school when I was 16.
- 5) I graduated from Oxford University in 2008.
- 6) How long did you study in the university?

The major/minor courses you take/The certificates/diploma you get

- 1) I took the courses in English, philosophy, math and so on.

- 2) I got the first degree/Master's Degree when I graduated.
- 3) I majored in math at the university.
- 4) My favorite subject was English.
- 5) I passed some examinations with good marks to get a graduation certificate.
- 6) I took the English Proficiency Test and got the certificate.

The campus life/impression

- 1) I enjoyed my time in the school.
- 2) I had a very deep impression of living on campus.
- 3) There were many educational resources for the students to use.

The job you take after school

- 1) I went to a joint venture as an employee after four years of study.
- 2) I intended to further my study abroad after I graduated from the college.
- 3) I have been working here since my graduation.

3. Build up your language stock 的目的为加深学生对本课词汇的理解及提高学生的灵活应用能力。教师可以增加一些类似的词汇搭配练习，在练习中扩大词汇学习量。其中练习8~9尤为重要，教师应设法做些补充练习，最好能归纳本课的重点词汇和用法，使学生达到学会使用的目的。练习9（句型套用）是为学生学习掌握本课重要句型专门补充编写的，这种套用句型练习可引导学生深入理解句子结构及其精妙之处，并在此基础上模拟套用这些句型，学习效果十分显著。因此教师要作为重点在课上引导学生完成这一练习，还可要求他们在练习的基础上背诵这些句型。

要求学生掌握本单元中的一些基本词汇的意义与用法：

course: to take courses in 攻读...课程

graduate: to graduate from 毕业于

explain: to explain ... to 向...解释

enthusiastic: be enthusiastic about 对...热心

popular: be popular with 受...喜爱

patient: be patient with 对...有耐心

point: no point in (doing) 做...没有意义

major: major in 专业为

favorite: favorite subjects, sports, food 最喜爱的科目、运动、食品

private: private lessons, interview 私下上课，单独面试

词汇补充练习:

(英汉互译:)

- 1) 他毕业于那所大学。(graduate)
- 2) 他主修计算机科学。(major)
- 3) 你最喜爱的颜色是什么?(favorite)
- 4) 她选读医学课程。(course)
- 5) 她热心于帮助无家可归的儿童。(enthusiastic)
- 6) She took private lessons in piano.
- 7) I see no point in talking to her.
- 8) He explained to me how to get there.
- 9) He is not patient with such a man.
- 10) Baseball is a popular sport with the public in America.

(英汉互译答案:)

- 1) He graduated from that college.
- 2) He majors in computer science.
- 3) What is your favorite color?
- 4) She took a medical course.
- 5) She is enthusiastic about helping the homeless children.
- 6) 她接受个别辅导学钢琴。
- 7) 我发觉和她谈话没意思。
- 8) 他向我说明如何到达那里。
- 9) 他无法容忍这种人。
- 10) 棒球在美国是一项很受公众欢迎的运动。

4. Extra reading 的目的为锻炼学生独立阅读能力。教师宜在课上限时完成,可提出简短的问题让学生口头回答,书中的理解性练习可留给学生课后完成。

5. Passage B 为主课文A的补充短文,分别设有阅读理解和句型翻译套写两项练习,其中的重要词汇注释如下:

Passage B的重要词汇注释如下

act *n.* the process of doing or performing something, a deed

做或执行某事的过程,行为

v. to behave or perform 举止,行动;演出,表演;起作用,见效

e.g. He acts like an actor.

他的举止就像是个演员。

As a lawyer, his mind has to act quickly.

作为一名律师，他的头脑得很灵活。

You've got to wait five minutes for the pain-killer to act.

你得等5分钟止疼药才能起作用。

bury *v.* 埋葬

e.g. The clever dog has buried a bone there.

那只聪明的狗在那儿藏了一根骨头。

charm *n.* 魅力；符咒

e.g. A mischievous grin was among the child's many charms.

顽皮露齿而笑是这个孩子可爱的特征之一。

ease *v.* 使轻松，减轻；*n.* 安逸，安心

e.g. The aspirins eased my headache.

阿司匹林减轻了我的头疼。

Her mind was at ease knowing that the children were safe.

听说孩子们都很安全，她才放心。

fortune-teller *n.* 算命先生

e.g. Do you really believe the fortune-teller's words?

你真的相信那个算命先生的话吗？

magnet *n.* 磁铁；有吸引力的人/物

e.g. Dalian is a magnet for tourists.

大连是吸引游客的地方。

mind *n.* 思想；*v.* 介意

e.g. He changed his mind when he heard all the facts.

他得知事实后改变了看法。

He doesn't mind doing the chores.

他不介意做家务。

nightmare *n.* 梦魇，噩梦

e.g. Traveling on those bad mountain roads is a nightmare.

在那崎岖的山路上旅行，真是件可怕的事。

realize *v.* 实现；了解

e.g. He finally realized his life-long ambition.

他最终实现了他毕生的理想。

rely *v.* 依靠，信赖

e.g. I relied on them to tell him the truth.

我指望他们来告诉他真相。

substitute *v.* 替代

e.g. He substituted as the typist in the office.
他替补做了这个办公室的打字员。

6. 本课的Applied Writing 为身份、学历等证书的基本写作格式, 包括1) 姓名、年龄、性别和工作单位; 2) 在毕业证书和学位证书中应该注明持证人在校学习期间成绩是否合格; 3) 签发日期、签发人; 4) 编号。教师要指导学生模拟套写, 鼓励他们翻译自己的学历证书等。

7. 本课的Pick Up Your Grammar 的目的为复习一般现在时、现在进行时和现在完成时的比较。教师还可根据学生的实际水平补充少量短句进行口头语法练习。



VI. 练习答案 (Key to Exercises)

Key to Integrated Skills Development

1. In 2004 2. graduated from Yale University 3. In 2008
2. 1. F 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T
3. 1. Math.
2. Very difficult.
3. No, they didn't, because they thought it was useless.
4. The teachers went on strike.
5. In the morning.
6. She wanted to help them to pass the examination.
7. Very well. Caroline and her three friends all passed their examination.
8. To pay her for the lessons she gave.
9. No, she refused, because she thought it was not fair if she took money for doing the teachers' job when they were on strike.
5. 1. what university you went to
2. What did you major in
3. How were
4. How many students were there in the university
5. When did you graduate
6. 1. I graduated from the City University

2. My major was English
 3. What was your favorite subject
 4. Can you speak any other foreign languages
7. 1. graduated 2. courses 3. philosophy 4. no point in 5. popular
6. enthusiastic 7. method 8. patient 9. explain 10. private
8. 1. 你毕业于哪所大学?
2. 你学过什么课程?
3. 你们学校有多少学生?
4. 那里的老师怎么样?
5. 我可以问你几个关于你所受教育的问题吗?
6. I graduated from Binhai University.
7. I majored in history.
8. I took English, history, philosophy, typing and some other subjects.
9. Can you tell me what your favorite subject is?
10. Did the students have any problems in their studies?
9. 1. a. 凯西实际上是我们学校里最不受欢迎的教师。
b. Dolls are, in fact, still the most welcomed presents for girls.
c. The open market is, in fact, the most favorite shopping place for most housewives in our town.
2. a. 他为那男孩感到难过, 并认为如果再责备他就不公平了。
b. I felt bad for my mistake, and did not think it would be OK if I complained more about it.
c. The man felt pleased for his courage, and did not think it would be too much if he treated himself with another drink.
10. 1. F 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. F 6. T
11. 1. By the grades of the examinations they take.
2. It is compared to the realization of students' dreams.
3. They may feel it is their nightmare.
4. They might go to fortune-tellers, buy lucky charms or follow old customs.
5. Because they believe that these things will act as magnets and "pull" them into the university.
6. In the author's opinion, students should study hard. There is no substitute for hard work.
12. 1. a. 在我们的社会, 判断人是根据他们在各种环境中的行为举止。
b. In their team, players are always judged by their performance in all kinds of games.
c. In this company, the employees are judged by their attitudes to the customers in all kinds of situations.
2. a. 很明显, 找到工作是每个毕业生的梦想, 而丢掉工作则是一场噩梦。
b. Obviously, winning the game is every player's dream, and losing it is their nightmare.
c. Obviously, going to school is every child's dream, and quitting school is their nightmare.
3. a. 为了揭开奥秘, 很多科学家一直在努力尝试。
b. To win the Olympic medals, many athletes train hard all the time.
c. To achieve their goals, many people work hard all the time.
4. a. 他能否在辩论中获胜, 没人会真的在意。

- b. Whether the research team will accomplish the task or not, nobody really knows.
c. Whether she is telling the truth or not, nobody really cares.

Key to Pick Up Your Grammar

- I'm looking for my wallet. I haven't found it yet.
- She has worked in the company for eight years. She will work there for many more years.
- Have you been in the university for two years?
— Yes. We are learning advanced English now.
- He has known the ancient town very well and he often goes there by bike.
- What are you going to do from 9 to 10 tomorrow?
— I am learning English at this time every day.
- I haven't heard from her in the past few years.
- He waters the flowers every day. Now he is watering the flowers in the yard. He has already watered the roses.



VII. 课文参考译文 (Text Translation for Reference)

对话 A: 我上的是耶鲁大学

迪克·戴隆是一位新的外籍英语教师。刘琳是他的一个中国学生，她对迪克所受的教育很感兴趣。

刘琳：戴隆先生，能告诉我您上的是哪所大学吗？

迪克：我上的是耶鲁大学。

刘琳：是吗？您在那儿都修了哪些课程？

迪克：我读的是哲学硕士。

刘琳：您在那儿学习了多长时间？

迪克：4年。

刘琳：您什么时候毕业的？

迪克：2008年毕业。

刘琳：毕业后您干什么了？

迪克：我去了德国。

刘琳：德国？您在那儿做什么？

迪克：我给一些德国大学生教英语。

刘琳：您在那儿待了多长时间？

迪克：只有1年。

对话 B: 我喜欢在北方大学度过的时光

刘琳正在给迪克讲述她上大学的情况。

迪克: 刘琳, 能告诉我你是哪所大学毕业的吗?

刘琳: 我是2009年北方大学毕业的。

迪克: 这所大学有多长的历史?

刘琳: 它是1947年建立的。

迪克: 这所大学有多少学生?

刘琳: 有29 000多名学生。

迪克: 有外国留学生吗?

刘琳: 有。有一些是来读本科学位的, 还有许多研究生。

迪克: 大部分学生都住在校内吗?

刘琳: 是的, 我们学校为所有学生提供宿舍, 还有学校餐厅。

迪克: 你喜欢在大学度过的时光吗?

刘琳: 是的, 我很喜欢。

短文 A: 卡罗琳当老师

卡罗琳在学校最喜欢的课程是数学。她喜欢解题, 并且对教学法感兴趣。但她的大多数朋友都觉得数学很难学, 而且因为他们认为数学是门没有用的课程, 所以觉得没必要在它上面下工夫。事实上, 数学是卡罗琳所在班最不受欢迎的课程。

卡罗琳上学的最后一年, 教师们因班级太大(一般是30到35人)而举行了为期两个月的罢工。每天早上, 卡罗琳就给她的三个朋友单独上数学课, 这样他们就有可能通过考试了。她既耐心又善于讲解, 授课进行得很顺利。卡罗琳和她的三个朋友最后都通过了考试。他们建议给卡罗琳付课酬, 但是她谢绝了。她很同情教师们的罢工, 她觉得代替教师们做点事拿钱不公平。

短文 B: 勤奋是无法替代的

在学校, 评判学生的标准是各种考试的成绩。显而易见, 通过考试是每个学生的梦想; 而不及格则是他们的噩梦。因此, 许多学生为了实现他们的梦想而一直在努力学习。但是也有人尝试其他窍门。比如他们会去找算命先生、买幸运符咒或者遵循某些古老的风俗。

在韩国, 有些学生会把自己的一些私人物品埋在想要就读的那所大学里, 因为他们相信这些东西会像磁铁一样把他们“吸”进那所大学。这样是不是真的有效不得而知, 但至少可以使学生想到考试时思想能放松一点儿。不过要记住, 人不可能靠运气过日子。勤奋是无法替代的。

Unit

2

Your Résumé



I. 教学时间分配 (Time Allocation)

本单元共需4~5学时，对话1学时；课文A及练习2~3学时，课文B、语法等1学时（教师可根据本课内容的难易程度稍作增减）。Extra reading的目的为锻炼学生的独立阅读能力。教师宜在课上限时完成，可提出简短的问题让学生口头回答，书中的理解性练习可留给学生自己课后完成。



II. 教学目的与要求 (Aims and Requirements)

I 内容重点 (Language Focus)

1. 交际重点 (Communicative Focus)

介绍个人简历的写法，其中包括姓名、性别、年龄、住址、电话号码、学历、工作经历、外语程度、所谋职位及业余爱好、性格等。

2. 重点训练单词和词组 (Focal Words and Expressions)

attend, data, encouragement, factor, healthy, hope, hopeful, include, major, objective, part-time,

reference, résumé, send, secondly, start with, put in, have ... in mind, go over, make a change, work as, get along with, upon request

3. 重点句型和习惯表达法 (Focal Functions and Patterns)

- 1) Could you tell me how to write a résumé?
- 2) Could you go over it and see if I need to make any changes about my résumé?
- 3) You should start with your name, sex, age ...
- 4) Secondly, you should put in/include the education ...
- 5) Besides, you should also have the job objective in mind.
- 6) I worked as an assistant manager in a part-time job.
- 7) References will be sent upon request.
- 8) Is my résumé all right?

II 技能要求 (Skills Development)

1 听说 (Listening and Speaking)

熟读对话与课文，背诵课文对话语句，并能就有关个人简历的问题进行问答。

2 读译 (Reading and Translating)

能读懂有关个人简历的文字资料，翻译简单的个人背景。

3 写 (Applied Writing)

A. 能仿照课文利用所学的词汇与结构写一份自己的个人简历。

Sample: I am a new employee in a foreign company in China. Before I went there I studied in the School of Adult Education, Binhai University of Technology, where I majored in computer science. After two years of study, I graduated from the school in July 2004. When I studied there, I took a part-time job as the manager's assistant at Binhai Import and Export Company for two months. I think I got a very good experience, from which I learned that if one wants to succeed in his career, he must be healthy, hard-working, honest and able to get along with others. Now those things are still important. I will keep them in mind as the guide to my work.

B. 进一步熟悉英文学历证书的基本写作格式。



III. 背景资料 (Background Information)

Tips on “How to Write a Résumé”

To be competitive in the job market you must have the right selling tool. The résumé is your powerful business and professional resource. A well-planned presentation and the ability to project confidence can lead you to greater revenues, help you to attain instant recognition and place you in a career of choice.

Résumé tips are as follows:

1. A résumé should be:
 - Original
 - Informative at a glance
 - Geared toward the industry/company targeted
 - One page in length (preference) — two pages (acceptable)
 - Free from error, visibly crisp and clean
 - Brief and clear in content
2. Common sense rules:
DO NOT:
 - Use the word “I”
 - Abuse the word “all”
 - Present meaningless information
 - Use the phrase “same as above”
 - Show frequent changes in employment
 - Inject meaningless hot words
 - Expect a cover letter to replace a résumé
3. Key elements:
 - An objective
 - Qualifying skills
 - Education, training or related experience
 - List of certifications, licenses or languages spoken
 - Brief company description
 - Employment highlights
 - Pattern of growth or increased responsibilities
 - List of accomplishments, awards, nominations or honors



IV. 语言点 (Language Points)

I 课文补充注释 (Notes to Dialogues and Passage A)

1. **She went to talk to Professor Kunts, a foreign teacher in her university, about how to write a résumé in English to apply for a job in a foreign company in China.**

她去向校内的一位外籍教师昆兹教授请教如何用英语写个人简历，以便到国内的一家外国公司求职。

1) 句中动词不定式结构how to write ...是“疑问词+不定式”的结构，它充当介词about的宾语，动词不定式要作介词的宾语必须由疑问词引导。

e.g. He has no idea of how to do it.

他不知道如何做。

I gave him a suggestion on where to go.

我建议他应该去哪儿。

2) in English意为“用英语”。这里in表示表达方式。

e.g. in Chinese 用汉语，in ink 用墨水，in pencil 用铅笔，in red 用红色。

试比较：

Don't write it in pencil. 请不要使用铅笔写。

We write with a pen or a pencil. 我们用钢笔或铅笔写字。

2. **Secondly, you should also include the education you have received, work experience you have had, and foreign languages you have studied.**

其次，你还要写上你的学历，你的工作经历，以及你学的外语。

句中secondly这一副词表示顺序。表示序列可用序数词或序数词+ly，如“first-firstly, second-secondly, third-thirdly”等。

句中you have received/had/studied为定语从句，前面省略了关联词that/which，分别修饰education/work experience/foreign languages。

3. **Could you go over it and see if I need to make any changes?**

您能帮我看一下需要做些什么改动吗？

1) 句中need一词为实意动词，意为“需要”，故作宾语的动词不定式需带to。

e.g. Does he need to know the fact?

他需要知道事实吗？

You don't need to do it yourself.

你不需要亲自做。

此外，need还可做情态动词用，表示“需要干...”之意，主要用于否定句和疑问句。

e.g. You needn't hurry.

你不必匆忙。

Need she come here? Yes, she must.

她需要来这儿吗？是，她必须来。

2) 句中if引导宾语从句，含义为“是否”。此时与whether的区别如下：

(1) 在介词之后的宾语从句只能用whether而不用if引导，且if不能与or not连用，whether则可以。

e.g. I haven't settled the question of whether I'll go back. (不能用if。)

我还没决定是否要回去。

I can't say whether he is right or not. (不能用if。)

我无法说他是非对错。

(2) if只能引导宾语从句，而whether可引导所有名词性从句（宾语从句、表语从句、主语从句和同位语从句），它还能引导让步状语从句。

e.g. Whether she likes it is not clear yet. (不能用if。)

我不知道她是否喜欢。

Whether you come with me or not, I will go. (不能用if。)

无论你是否与我一起去，我都要去。

4. I believe you're likely to get what you want, the assistant manager's position.

我觉得你能够得到你想得到的经理助理这份工作。

句中likely为形容词，意为“可能的”，常用于以下两种结构：

1) be likely to do:

e.g. I am likely to be very busy tomorrow.

明天我可能很忙。

He is likely to win the game.

他可能赢得比赛。

2) It is likely that ...:

e.g. It's likely that the meeting will last until late.

会议有可能持续到很晚。

It's very likely that we will arrive late.

我们很可能会晚到。

5. Excellent English, fair German. 精通英语，德语一般。

成绩的划分如下：excellent优；good良；fair中；bad差。这是一种常用于简历和广告等应用文中的省略结构，故可改写为：Someone's English is excellent, and his/her German is fair.

词汇用法 (Word Usage)

attend *v.* be present at 定期去某处；出席，参加

e.g. The child attends school at 7:30 a.m. every day.

这个小孩每天早上7点半上学。

Will you be attending the meeting?

你将要参加那次会议吗？

chairman *n.* a chairperson, esp. a male one 主席 (chairwoman 女主席)

e.g. He was elected chairman of the Student Union.

他当选为学生会主席。

She is chairwoman of our Trade Union.

她是我们工会的女主席。

data *n.* fact, information 数据, 资料

e.g. These data are very useful.

这些数据很有用。

He collected sufficient data for research.

他收集了充分的资料来研究。

encourage *v.* to make somebody feel brave enough to do something by giving active approval 鼓舞, 鼓励

e.g. He encouraged her to apply for the job.

他鼓励她申请这份工作。

The government encourages young people to study abroad.

政府鼓励青年人出国学习。

encouragement *n.* the act of encouraging 鼓励

e.g. His words are of great encouragement to me.

他的话给我很大的鼓励。

Without the teacher's encouragement, he couldn't be successful.

没有老师的鼓励, 他不可能成功。

factor *n.* any of the conditions that acts with others to bring about a result 因素

e.g. The president's support is an important factor in the success of the project.

总统的支持是这个工程成功的重要因素。

Many factors can affect our progress.

许多因素会影响我们的进展。

healthy *a.* physically strong and not often ill 健康的

e.g. Although she is 80 years old, she still is healthy.

尽管她80岁, 但是仍然很健康。

All the parents want healthy babies.

所有的父母都想有健康的孩子。

Antonym: **unhealthy** *a.* not usually in good health 不健康的

e.g. The unhealthy children couldn't get good food and fresh air.

不健康的孩子们不能得到良好的食物和新鲜的空气。

He has unhealthy pale skin.

他的肤色苍白不健康。

health *n.* the state of being well in the body and mind 健康

e.g. Health is more important than money.

健康比金钱更重要。

We drink to his parents' health.

我们为他父母的健康干杯。

hope *n.* the expectation that something will happen as one wishes 希望

e.g. Is there any hope that she will recover from her illness?

她有希望康复吗?

Hopes of reaching a peace settlement are now fading.

和平解决希望正在消失。

hopeful *a.* feeling hope 有希望的

e.g. I'm hopeful of success.

我对成功抱有希望。

We're hopeful that he will arrive early.

我们希望他早点到。

hopeless *a.* showing lack of hope 没有希望的

e.g. He is hopeless of passing the examination.

他无望通过考试。

She has hopeless tears in her eyes.

她眼中含着绝望的泪水。

include *v.* have as part 包括

e.g. My job doesn't include making coffee for the boss.

我的工作不包括为老板煮咖啡。

Is the service included in the bill?

账单中包括服务费吗?

inclusion *n.* the act of including 包括

e.g. The editor was against the inclusion of the bad advertisement in the newspaper.

编辑反对把这条不健康的广告登在报纸上。

The inclusion of you in our group will help us a lot in the task.

你加入我们的活动将大大有助于我们的工作。

inclusive *a.* including everything or all the numbers 包括的

e.g. The secretary booked the room from May the 5th to the 18th inclusive.

秘书预订了房间, 是从5月5日到18日, 含18日。

The rent is \$100 inclusive of heating charges.

房租是100美元, 包括取暖费。

major *n.* (AmE) a chief subject at a university 专业

e.g. My major was English when I studied in the university.

上大学时, 我的专业是英语。

What major are you in?

你学什么专业?

v. (**in**) study as the chief subject when doing a university degree 专修

e.g. He is majoring in French.

他修法语。

What would you like to major in?

你喜欢学什么专业?

objective *n.* an aim that must be worked towards over a long period 目标

e.g. Our objective is to have everyone live in their own house.

我们的目标是人人住上自己的房子。

What is your job objective?

你谋求的工作目标是什么?

part-time *a.* working during only a part of the regular working time 业余的, 兼职的

e.g. He found a part-time job in the restaurant.

他在餐馆找了份兼职的工作。

She worked as a part-time secretary in the company.

她在公司做兼职秘书。

Antonym: **full-time** *a.* working during the whole of the usual working period 专职的

e.g. After a lot of part-time jobs, he's finally got a full-time job.

在做了许多兼职工作后, 他终于有了一份专职的工作。

reference *n.* an act of referring; the state of being related or referred 参考; 相关; 就...而言

e.g. This excellent translation results from his frequent references to a dictionary.

这篇优秀的译文源于他经常查字典。

I have loaded my thesis with references.

我在论文中引用了大量参考资料。

You may keep this book for reference.

你可以留着这本书作查阅参考用。

résumé *n.* curriculum vitae (CV) 个人简历

e.g. Can you write your résumé?

你会写个人简历吗?

If you want to apply for a job, you have to send your résumé to them.

如果你要申请工作, 就得把你的简历寄给他们。

secondly *ad.* as the second of a set of facts 第二, 其次

e.g. Firstly, I need your name and address; secondly, what's your date of birth?

首先我需要你的姓名和住址; 其次你的生日是什么时候?

send *v.* to cause to be conveyed; to direct to go on a mission; to give off or issue

派遣; 发送; 放出

e.g. The radio operator was busy sending the message.

无线电操作人员在忙着发送消息。

The old lady managed to send all her children to college.

这位老妇人设法将她的孩子全都送上了大学。
 You may send the picture to me through e-mail.
 你可以通过电邮将照片发送给我。

start with begin with 从…开始

e.g. We will start with the discussion of those problems.
 我们从讨论那些问题开始。
 They started their journey with a walk.
 他们以散步开始他们的旅行。

put in include 包括

e.g. You should put in your work experience in the résumé.
 你的简历应包括工作经历。
 The author put in some cultural notes in the book.
 作者在书中增加了一些文化背景介绍。

upon request when asked for 按要求

e.g. My references will be sent upon request.
 如需要，我会寄去推荐信。
 Detailed information can be obtained upon request.
 如索取可得到详细资料。

get along with have a friendly relationship with 与…相处

e.g. Do you get along with your schoolmates?
 你与同学相处得好吗？
 He is easy to get along with.
 他容易相处。



V. 练习指导及补充练习 (Guide to Exercises and Supplementary Exercises)

1. Check your understanding 的目的为帮助学生深入细致地理解课文内容，据此可练习与单元内容相关的词汇与句型，并能够较熟练地应用。

补充练习如下：

For Dialogue A

Answer the following questions briefly according to Dialogue A.

- 1) Could Professor Kunts tell Liz how to write a résumé? (Sure, of course.)
- 2) How should she start?/What should she start with? (First, start with her name, sex, age ...)
- 3) Then what should she write? (Secondly, ... her education, work experience ...)
- 4) What else should she put in/include in the résumé? (Besides, ... hobbies, job objective ...)

For Dialogue B

Answer the following questions briefly according to Dialogue B.

- 1) Could Professor Kunts go over the résumé and see if she needs to make any changes? (Certainly.)
- 2) Where did Liz study or work? (She attended a middle school in ..., worked as an assistant ...)
- 3) What language(s) is she good at? (English ...)
- 4) Can she get the job? (She is likely to get it.)

For Passage A

Answer the following questions briefly according to Passage A.

- 1) What are Liz's hobbies? (... traveling.)
- 2) How old is she? (... years old.)
- 3) Where does she live? (302 Building 2, ... Street, Binhai ...)
- 4) Where/When did (does) she receive the education? (... September 2008 to July 2011 ...)
- 5) What experience does she have? (A part-time job as the manager's assistant ...)
- 6) How about her foreign languages? (Excellent English, fair German ...)
- 7) When can she send in any references to the company? (Upon request.)

2. Learn to communicate 的练习3可作为学生学习如何填写个人简历的范例, 让学生仿照它写出一份自己的简历。

Résumé

Personal Data:

Name: _____ Age: _____ Sex: _____

Address: 106 Building 5, Youth Road, Zhuhai, 519089, China

Tel: _____

Email: _____

Education: Sept. 2006 — July 2010 Beijing University of Technology

Sept. 2004 — July 2006 No. 1 Foreign Languages Middle School

Work Experience:

Jan. 2008 — March 2008 Worked as Sales Manager at Zhuhai Import and Export Company

July 2007 — Sept. 2007 Sold household electrical appliances for Zhuhai Electronic Corp.

Foreign Languages:

Excellent English, fair Japanese

Hobbies: Reading, traveling, writing, collecting stamps

Other Personal Information:

In good health, hard-working, easy to get along with

Job Objective:

Sales Manager

References: Will be sent upon request



3. Build up your language stock 中的练习4~6可帮助学生巩固本单元所学过的词汇与句型，并利用它们进行有关填写个人简历的对话练习。练习7（句型套用）是为学生学习掌握本课重要句型专门补充编写的。这种句型套用练习可引导学生深入理解句子结构及其精妙之处，并在此基础上模拟套用这些句型，学习效果十分显著。因此教师要作为重点在课上引导学生完成这一练习，还可要求他们在练习的基础上背诵这些句型。

词汇补充练习:

(英汉互译:)

- 1) She speaks French, and German as well.
- 2) She told her boss what she had in mind.
- 3) The form will be sent upon request.
- 4) The manager went over the contract carefully.
- 5) We have attained our main objectives.
- 6) 她申请了这个职位。(apply)
- 7) 我正在找兼职的工作。(part-time)
- 8) 她与外国留学生相处得很好。(get along with)
- 9) 她可能会成功。(be likely to)
- 10) 你要参加这次会议吗? (attend)

(英汉互译答案:)

- 1) 她会说法语，也能说德语。
- 2) 她把心中所想告诉她的老板。
- 3) 表格函索即寄。
- 4) 经理仔细地检查过合同。
- 5) 我们已经达到主要目标。
- 6) She applied for the position.
- 7) I'm looking for a part-time job.
- 8) She is getting along very well with the foreign students.
- 9) She is likely to succeed.
- 10) Will you be attending the meeting?

4. Extra reading 的目的为锻炼学生的独立阅读能力。教师宜在课上限时完成，可提出简短的问题让学生口头回答，书中的理解性练习可留给学生自己课后完成。

5. Passage B 为主课文A的补充短文，分别设有阅读理解和句型翻译套写两项练习，其中的重要词汇注释如下：

Passage B的重要词汇注释如下

feeling *n.* 感觉；感情

e.g. He played the piano with feeling.

他弹钢琴时充满激情。

grocery *n.* 食品杂货店

e.g. You can buy all kinds of foodstuff in this grocery.

你可以在食品杂货店买到各种食品。

life-long *a.* 一辈子的

e.g. Books are my life-long friends.

书籍是我终生的朋友。

prove *v.* 证明

e.g. He has proved (or proven) his point.

他证明了他的观点。

remain *v.* 仍旧

e.g. A cure remains to be found.

目前还没有找到治疗方法。

task *n.* 任务；工作

e.g. This task was accomplished with great efforts.

这项任务是经过巨大努力才完成的。

6. 本课的Applied Writing 学习英文证书的基本格式，教师应指导学生遵循特定的格式，语言要规范简洁。学生首先要按照范例模仿证书的基本格式，然后再模仿证书文字比较固定的结构和措辞。

7. 本课的Pick Up Your Grammar 为复习将来时态的表达方法。教师还可根据学生的实际水平补充少量短句进行口头语法练习。



VI. 练习答案 (Key to Exercises)

Key to Integrated Skills Development

1. F 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. T 6. F 7. T 8. T
2. 1. Binhai.
2. School of Adult Education.
3. Binhai University of Technology.
4. Three years.
5. Two months.
6. No, she didn't. She only did a part-time job there.
7. Reading, listening to music, traveling, playing basketball.
8. Three.
3. (Open)
4. 1. 她去和她学校的外教昆兹教授谈论如何写一份英文简历。
2. 我需要写一份简历向一家驻中国的外国公司求职。
3. 你的简历首先应写上你的名字、性别、年龄、地址及电话号码。
4. 你还应写上你所受过的教育、工作经历以及你所学过的外语。
5. 你也可以在你的简历上写上你的业余爱好和其他的个人情况。
5. 1. Besides, you should also include the job objective you have in mind.
2. Can you go over it and see if I need to make any changes?
3. He attended No. 8 Middle School in Binhai.
4. You have had some work experience as well.
5. She is likely to get what she wants, a secretary's job.
6. 1. a résumé
2. applying for a job.
3. sex
4. job (work) experience
5. a hobby
6. a job objective
7. going over
8. attended
7. 1. a. 身高1.75米, 强壮、幽默、爱找乐子, 且为人随和。
b. 1.30 m, naughty, cute, trouble-making and fun to play with.
c. 5.8 feet, strong, skillful, speaking English, and hard to compete with.
2. a. 要求时提供。

- b. Will be informed upon arrival.
- c. Will be answered upon application.

8 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T 6. F 7. F 8. F

- 9
1. They run a grocery store in Philadelphia.
 2. Their business is going on very well.
 3. They can't speak English very well.
 4. By listening to the radio and watching TV.
 5. They do not seem to learn much in school.
 6. No, the children's ideas and feelings are half Chinese and half American.
 7. They all believe that learning is a life-long task.

- 10
1. a. 但是，环保成了人们关心的大事。
b. However, money proves to be a big headache.
c. However, the Mid-east area proves to be a big issue.
 2. a. 对我们来说，赢得友谊比赢得比赛更重要。
b. To them, learning practical skills is even harder than memorizing knowledge.
c. To her, gaining practical work experience is even more important than making money.
 3. a. 在我们学校，学生们似乎对活动课的学习内容很有怨言。
b. In our kindergarten, children seem to enjoy what they are doing in the playground.
c. In the company, all the employees seem to be happy about what they've achieved in their jobs.
 4. a. 尽管我们学习很努力，但是我们的成绩还是没变。
b. Old as they get, their hobbies remain unchanged.
c. Far apart as we are, our dreams remain the same.

Key to Pick Up Your Grammar

1. I shall go home after class. / I'm going home after class.
2. Shall I have to pass the exam?
3. She will be very happy to see you.
4. I shall/will not leave you alone. / I am not to leave you alone.
5. We shall have a party on Sunday. / We are going to have a party on Sunday.
6. Will they go by train? / Are they going by train?
7. Will you go to see the film with them? / Are you going to see the film with them?
8. The president is to come to visit our country next month.
9. Please give me a reply as soon as you get the letter.
10. The class begins at 8:00 a.m. tomorrow. / The class will begin at 8:00 a.m. tomorrow.



VII. 课文参考译文 (Text Translation for Reference)

对话 A: 如何写个人简历

莉兹快要大学毕业了。她去向校内的一位外籍教师昆兹教授请教如何用英语写个人简历,以便到国内的一家外国公司求职。

昆兹教授: 你好,莉兹,请坐。我能帮你点什么?

莉兹: 谢谢您。我快要毕业了,我需要写一份个人简历到一家外企求职。您能告诉我如何写英文简历吗?

昆兹教授: 好办。你的个人简历应先从姓名、性别、年龄、住址及电话号码开始。其次,你还要写上你的学历、你的工作经历,以及你学过的外语。

莉兹: 就这么多吗?

昆兹教授: 不,你还可以写上你的爱好和其他的个人情况,这些可能也有用。此外你还要把所想到的主要求职目的加上去。

莉兹: 非常感谢,昆兹教授。明天见。

昆兹教授: 明天见。

对话 B: 我的个人简历这样写行吗?

莉兹准备好了她的个人简历,她正就简历跟昆兹教授探讨。

莉兹: 昆兹教授,早上好。我的个人简历写完了。您能帮我看一下需要做些什么改动吗?

昆兹教授: 当然。你在这所大学读了两年,中学就读于滨海第八中学,还有一些工作经验。

莉兹: 是的,自从上大学以来,我一直担任学生会主席。另外我还做过一份直销工作。假期我还兼职当过经理助理。

昆兹教授: 从你的简历来看,你英语和德语都不错。我觉得你能够得到你想得到的经理助理这份工作。

莉兹: 感谢您的鼓励。这么说我的简历是可以了?

昆兹教授: 当然。莉兹,祝你好运。

莉兹: 谢谢您,再见!

短文 A: 简历

个人情况:

姓名: 张莉兹

性别: 女

年龄: 22

住址：中国滨海市宏伟路2栋302号 邮政编码：116023

电话：0481-846746XX

电子邮箱：lizzhang@yahoo.cn

教育：

2008.9—2011.7 滨海理工大学成人教育学院

2005.9—2008.7 滨海第八中学

工作经历：

2008.9—2011.7 成人教育学院学生会主席

2008.1—2010.5 滨海北大街公司 任经理助理

2007.7—2007.9 滨海儿童用品商店 直销儿童课桌

外语程度：英语精通，德语一般

爱好：读书、听音乐、旅行、打篮球

其他：身高1.70 m, 健康、诚实、勤奋、随和

申请职位：经理助理

推荐信：如需要随时呈交

短文 B: 学习一生无止境

杨先生和杨太太是海外华人。现在他们住在费城，开了一家食品杂货店。他们非常努力地干活，生意维持得不错。

然而，英语却是他们的一大难题。他们的英语说得不太好。他们非常想去上学，多学习一点英语，但无奈生意太忙，根本抽不出时间。所以，他们只得在商店一边工作一边听收音机、看电视来提高口语水平。对他们来说，学习真是比做小生意还要难。

此外，杨先生夫妇还要为孩子们在学校所受的教育担心。费城是一个做生意的好地方，但是那儿的学校却大不相同。在中国，孩子们要做许多听力和阅读练习，而且要学习很多的知识，他们非常尊敬师长。然而在美国，孩子们在学校似乎想要做什么就做什么。这样，有些孩子就学不到很多东西。

也许杨先生夫妇的观念是中国式的，而他们孩子的思维则是半中国半美国式的。虽然差异明显，但是有一点是完全一样的：对他们所有人来说，学习一生无止境。

Unit

3

I Want to Further My Study Abroad



I. 教学时间分配 (Time Allocation)

本单元共需4~5学时，对话1学时；课文A及练习2~3学时，课文B、语法等1学时（教师可根据本课内容的难易程度稍作增减）。Extra reading的目的为锻炼学生的独立阅读能力。教师宜在课上限时完成，可提出简短的问题让学生口头回答，书中的理解性练习可留给学生自己课后完成。



II. 教学目的与要求 (Aims and Requirements)

I 内容重点 (Language Focus)

1. 交际重点 (Communicative Focus)

与他人谈论继续深造求学的情况，了解国外大学的情况，包括继续深造求学的入学要求、申请截止日期、学费、资助及所学专业、课程、学位等；学校概况，如它的性质，公立还是私立、学校的历史、学生的数量、类别、吃住的情况等。

2. 重点训练单词和词组 (Focal Words and Expressions)

campus, chemistry, distance fee, further, intend, mark, period, regularly, scholarship, tuition, further one's study, take part in, make the bed, make a long-distance call, intend to do something, try to do something, not need to be/do, be happy to do something, get along well with

3. 重点句型和习惯表达法 (Focal Functions and Patterns)

- 1) I intend to further my study abroad when I graduate from college.
- 2) Is it very expensive to study in your department?
- 3) You don't need to be very rich.
- 4) I have to pass some examinations to get a scholarship.
- 5) You need to be able to get along with students from different cultures.
- 6) I will send in my personal data upon request.
- 7) I am happy to help him with his lessons.
- 8) All the conditions here make me feel satisfied.

II 技能要求 (Skills Development)

1 听说 (Listening and Speaking)

要求学生能熟读对话与课文，背诵课文对话语句；要求学生能听懂教师的提问并且作出简要的英语回答。

2 读译 (Reading and Translating)

要求学生能读懂简短的有关接受教育方面的英语文章以获取必要的信息，并能回答相关的阅读理解练习；训练学生英汉互译包含重点词语或结构的句子，培养学生的英语表达能力。

3 写 (Applied Writing)

A. 鼓励学生用学过的单词、词组与结构表述自己所受教育的经历。

Sample: I intend to further my graduate study in Beijing Normal University when I graduate from college. So I have to ask for some information by making a long-distance call to the university. The clerks there are very kind to answer my questions. They tell me that it is not very expensive to study there and if I pass some examinations with good marks, I can get a scholarship. In some cases, there are some chances for me to do a part-time job there to pay for my tuition fees and earn some pocket money. I can live on campus if I want to, which means that I can make full use of the educational resources and in my free time take part in some activities. All these convenient conditions make me pleased. So I decide that I will further my study in that university.

B. 练习套写英文学历证书等文件。



III. 背景资料 (Background Information)

1 英国的高等教育 (Higher Education in Britain)

British higher education has become a mass system. Approximately 1.8 million students currently are in the higher education system. There are 114 university institutions (and 60 higher education colleges) in the UK, counting separately the constituent colleges of the federal universities of Wales and London. In addition, higher education programs are offered in many further-education colleges.

Other than Oxford and Cambridge and the four Scottish universities established before 1600, most universities are of more recent origin. The colleges of advanced technology that traced their origins back to the early days of the Industrial Revolution became universities at the same time. The Open University, which teaches via radio, television, and correspondence, is still one of Britain's most distinctive higher education institutions and has been much imitated. Finally, the polytechnics, with similar origins, gained university status in 1992.

All British institutions of higher education, whether universities or colleges, receive the bulk of their incomes from the state. Public expenditure on higher education amounts to £6.75 billion.

2 兰卡斯特大学 (Lancaster University)

Lancaster University is one of Britain's top universities, and the overall ranking is 28th in the *Sunday Times University Guide 2005* of 119 UK universities and colleges. The Lancaster campus is at Bailrigg, approximately 3 miles south of the center of the city of Lancaster. The University Campus is an attractive, safe parkland campus just on the outskirts of the beautiful and historic city of Lancaster and within easy reach of the Lake District National Park. The Institute for English Language Education offers courses to help overseas students improve their command of the English language and to enhance their study skills. The cost of university accommodation (and general living costs) at Lancaster is among the lowest in the country.



IV. 语言点 (Language Points)

I 课文补充注释 (Notes to Dialogues and Passage A)

1. Hold the line, please.

请等一下。

这是打电话时经常使用的一句话。原意是：“请拿着听筒，不要放下。”这里，line的意思是：a wire or wires connecting a telephone 电话线路

e.g. Our company has 10 lines.

我们公司10条电话线路。

I'm sorry, the line is very bad. I can't hear you clearly.

对不起，电话线路杂音太大，我听不清。

2. I'll put you through to the secretary of the department.

我给您接通系秘书的电话。

put sb through to的意思是“接通…电话”。

e.g. Hold the line, please. I'll put you through to the general manager.

请等一下，我给您接通总经理的电话。

Could you put me through to the sales department?

请接销售部。

3. Good morning. Norman Green speaking.

早上好！我是诺曼·格林。

Norman Green speaking是This is Norman Green speaking的省略形式。在打电话时，要表达“我是…”时，英语一般不说“I am …”，而说“This is … speaking”。

e.g. IBM Company. This is Nancy speaking.

IBM公司，我是南希。

Can I speak to Susan?

可以请苏珊听电话吗？

Speaking.

我就是。

4. Sure. Go ahead, please.

当然，请讲吧。

go ahead的用法很多，在不同的上下文中有不同的意思。

e.g. You go ahead; we catch up with you later.

你先走一步，我们随后就来。

Go ahead, we are all listening to you.

开始吧，我们都在听着呢。

In spite of the bad weather, the sports meet goes ahead.

尽管天气不好，运动会照常举行。

— Do you mind my smoking here?

— Go ahead.

— 您介意我在这儿吸烟吗？

— 请吧。

5. I will. I look forward to seeing you in England. Good-bye.

我会的。我期待着在英国与您见面。再见。

句中的词组look forward to“期待”，其中to是介词，故其后接名词、动名词或者代词。

e.g. The people of the whole country look forward to the results of the presidential election.

全国人民期待着总统选举的结果。

I'm looking forward to hearing from you soon.

我期待着你能尽快回信。

6. Marie's parents are not very rich, so Marie will work as an au pair girl to support herself.

玛丽的父母不怎么富裕，所以玛丽将要当一名寄宿帮工女学生来资助自己上学。

句中an au pair girl是指a foreign girl who is allowed to live with a family in return for doing light work in the house，译为“寄宿帮工的外国女孩”。

e.g. The Browns have got a Canadian au pair girl for five months.

布朗一家找了一个加拿大寄宿帮工女学生来家住5个月。

The au pair girl is so nice that they want her to stay longer.

这个寄宿帮工女学生真好，他们想多留她些日子。

7. She will stay with an English family, the Clarks, during this period.

在此期间她将和英国人克拉克一家住在一起。

句中the Clarks，指克拉克一家。定冠词常用在姓氏的复数前，表示全家。

e.g. The Turners are sitting at breakfast table.

特纳一家正坐在桌旁吃早饭。

The Browns are getting along very well with their new neighbors.

布朗一家与他们的新邻居相处得很好。

8. Marie will help Mrs. Clark in the house in her spare time by doing the washing-up, making the bed, laying the table, dusting rooms, taking telephone messages and shopping.

玛丽在业余时间将要帮助克拉克夫人在家里洗餐具、铺床、摆餐桌、清扫房间、接电话和购物等。

句中doing the washing-up, making the bed, laying the table, dusting rooms, taking telephone messages and shopping为动名词短语，做介词by的宾语。

e.g. Any special reason for wanting to leave the company?

你离开这家公司有什么特殊理由吗？

Well, we are looking for someone who is good at dealing with people.

不过，我们要找的人应该善于交际。

9. Marie will receive some pocket money each week.

玛丽每周将得到一些零花钱。

pocket money是指cash for small expenses。small change零花钱

e.g. Every week, Tom can get some pocket money from his uncle.

汤姆每周都能从叔叔那儿得到一些零花钱。

Some children spend their pocket money on chocolates, some on books.

有的孩子用零花钱买巧克力，有的买书。

10. All this makes Marie pleased.

所有这些使得玛丽很高兴。

(make) sb pleased是复合宾语结构，pleased是过去分词。

e.g. The interview makes them nervous.

面试使他们很紧张。

Our success in opening up a new market abroad makes us satisfied.

成功地开拓了国外市场使我们很满意。

在make动词后可接复合宾语（宾语+宾语补足语），其形式如下：

make + 名词/代词 +	名词	him the monitor of his class.
	形容词	his lecture very interesting.
	动词不定式	us stay after school.
	现在分词	me standing there.
	过去分词	himself understood.

III 词汇用法 (Word Usage)

campus *n.* the ground and buildings of a university 校园

on campus 在校园

e.g. The new library was built in the center of the campus.

那座新图书馆建在校园中心。

Do you live on campus or share a flat with others in the town?

你是住在学校呢，还是在市内与他人合租公寓呢？

chemistry *n.* the science which studies the substances of making up things 化学

e.g. Now he majors in chemistry at the university.

现在他在大学主修化学。

The professor won the Nobel Prize for chemistry.

这位教授获得诺贝尔化学奖。

distance *n.* the extent of space between two objects or places; a point or an area that is far

away 距离；间隔；远方远处的一点或一个地区

e.g. What distance do you have to walk to the library?

你到图书馆要走多远的路？

What is the distance between Beijing and Shanghai?

从北京到上海有多远？

I could see the bus coming in the distance.

我看见公共汽车从远处开来了。

fee *n.* a sum of money paid to a doctor, lawyer, school, etc. 费用；学费

e.g. The patient could not pay the fees to see the doctor.

那位病人交不起看医生的费用。

The tuition fees for a university have greatly risen in recent years.

大学的学费近年来增加了许多。

further *v.* to help something to advance; further one's study 推进，促进；进修，继续深造

e.g. This success should further your chances of promotion.

这次成功有助于你的提升。

The society was devoted to furthering the cause of world peace.

这个社团致力于推进世界和平的事业。

ad. at a greater distance; to a greater degree 更远地；更进一步地

e.g. Don't try my patience any further.

请别再试我的耐心了。

I can't walk any further.

我再也走不动了。

intend *v.* to have in one's mind as a purpose 有意，想要

intend to do 打算做

e.g. She intended to catch the early train, but she didn't get up in time.

她本打算赶早班火车，但是她没有及时起床。

We don't intend that they should know at this stage.

我们不打算让他们在这个阶段知道。

long-distance *a.* covering a long distance 长途的，远距离的

make a long-distance call to ... 给...打长途电话

e.g. He took part in a long-distance race yesterday.

他昨天参加了一次长跑比赛。

Have you made a long-distance telephone call to your manager?

你给经理打长途电话了吗？

mark *n.* a sign which shows something or represents a judgement of the quality of somebody's work 符号，分数

e.g. The teacher gives her full marks in English.

老师给她英语打了满分。

You should know how to use punctuation marks correctly.

你应该知道如何正确使用标点符号。

period *n.* a stretch of time 时期；阶段

e.g. There were long periods when we had no news of him.

我们过去经常好长时间没有他的消息。

Which period of history are you studying?

你正在学历史的哪一时期？

regular *a.* happening with the same amount of time between each one and the next or appearing again and again at the same time each day 有规律的，定期的

e.g. We meet on a regular basis.

我们定期见面。

They plant the seeds at regular intervals.

他们按固定的间距播种种子。

regularly *ad.* at regular times 有规律地，定期地

e.g. The doctor told the patient to take the medicine regularly three times a day.

医生告诉病人定期吃药，一天三次。

We went regularly to see the old man.

我们定期去看望那位老人。

scholarship *n.* a sum of money given to a student by an official body, esp. to pay (partly) for a course of study 奖学金

e.g. She won a scholarship to Oxford.

她获得了牛津大学的奖学金。

He is a student on a scholarship.

他是一位得到奖学金的学生。

tuition *n.* the payment for instruction 学费

e.g. tuition fee 学费

He's already paid a year's tuition.

他已经付了一年的学费。

Her tuition comes from a part-time job.

她的学费来自于一份兼职工作。

washing-up *n.* (the washing of the) dishes, plates after a meal (洗) 餐具；要洗的餐具

do the washing-up 洗餐具

e.g. I'll do the washing-up.

我来洗餐具。

There's a lot of washing-up to be done.

有许多的餐具要洗。

further one's study 进修，继续学习深造

e.g. She went abroad to further her study of economic management.

她出国进修经济管理。

After furthering his study there, he has made great progress in his work.

进修以后，他在工作中取得了很大进步。

make the bed tidy a bed 整理床铺

e.g. After getting up, the small boy makes the bed on his own.

那个小男孩起床后，自己整理床铺。

Making the bed is a basic skill for the nurse.

整理床铺是护士的一项基本技能。

take part in participate in 参与，参加

e.g. She has taken part in the discussion.

她参加了这次讨论。

Whether it is to win or to lose, it is important to take part in it.

无论输赢，重在参与。

pocket money a little money to buy oneself something; money given weekly to a child by his/her parents 零花钱

e.g. Parents should not give their children too much pocket money.

父母不应给孩子过多的零花钱。

The student offered his pocket money to Hope Project.

那位学生把他的零花钱捐给了希望工程。

put through to connect (somebody) by telephone 接通

e.g. If she is not in, can you put me through to her secretary?

如果她不在，你能给我接通她的秘书吗？

Please put me through to extension 136.

请接136分机。



V. 练习指导及补充练习 (Guide to Exercises and Supplementary Exercises)

1. Check your understanding 的目的为理解课文内容，熟悉与进修和深造有关的信息，利用学到的词汇和结构进行问答练习，达到能用它们交流并继续学习相关技能的目的。

补充练习如下：

For Dialogue A

Answer the following questions briefly according to Dialogue A.

1) What does Li Hong intend to do when she graduates from college? (To further her study

abroad.)

- 2) What does the receptionist say to her when she makes a long-distance call to the university? (Hold the line and he'll put her through to the secretary.)
- 3) What does the secretary say when Li Hong asks if she can ask him some questions? (Go ahead, please.)

For Dialogue B

Answer the following questions briefly according to Dialogue B.

- 1) How much does the secretary help Li Hong? (As much help as he can.)
- 2) How can Li Hong get a scholarship? (To pass some examinations with good marks, to have good personal qualities.)
- 3) What will Li Hong send in to the university? (Her application letter.)

For Passage A

Answer the following questions briefly according to Passage A.

- 1) Why does Marie go to London from Austria? (To do a Master's Degree.)
- 2) How can she support herself? (By serving as an au pair girl.)
- 3) With whom will she stay during the study? (The Clarks.)
- 4) What will she do in her spare time for the English family? (To do some housework.)
- 5) What will she do in the weekdays? (To attend the classes regularly, to take part in the activities on campus.)
- 6) What makes her pleased? (Receive pocket money, help her with English.)
- 7) Will she get along well with the English family? (Yes.)

2. Learn to communicate 的目的是让学生熟悉更多有关进修的交际句型，背诵它们并达到熟练应用的程度。

Reasons that somebody intends to further his or her study

- 1) There are some practical reasons for furthering my study.
- 2) The reason that I intend to study abroad is that I want to study modern science.

Courses to take when studying

- 1) I will take the course in computer science.
- 2) I want to study economy.

Where to study

- 1) I intend to further my study in this famous university abroad.
- 2) I am happy to study in the Philosophy Department.

Requirements for entering a university

- 1) Do I have to pass some examinations with good marks?
- 2) Do you have any special requirements for the applicant?
- 3) What personal qualities do I need to have to enter your school?

Tuition fee for furthering one's study

- 1) Will it be very expensive to study in your university?

- 2) It will cost me much money.
- 3) I cannot afford to further my study there.

Scholarship for the students

- 1) Do you have any scholarships for the students?
- 2) How can I get a scholarship?
- 3) I won a scholarship to the State University.

3. Build up your language stock 的目的是要求学生掌握本单元中有关的词汇及句型:

graduate from, further one's study, make a long-distance call, intend to do, try to do, not need to do, be happy to do, make somebody + *adj*, on campus, look forward to, as ... as, get along with, pass exams, washing-up, tuition, regularly, fee

练习9 (句型套用) 是为学生学习掌握本课重要句型专门补充编写的, 这种句型套用练习可引导学生深入理解句子结构及其精妙之处, 并在此基础上模拟套用这些句型, 效果十分显著。因此教师要作为重点练习在课上引导学生完成这一练习, 还可要求他们在练习的基础上背诵这些句型。

词汇补充练习:

(英汉互译:)

- 1) She was sent to the Central Nationalities University for furthering training.
- 2) The news made us disappointed.
- 3) He won a scholarship to the Oxford University.
- 4) I'm happy to see you.
- 5) He tried to stand on his hands, but he couldn't.
- 6) We don't need to tell her the truth; it will just upset her.
- 7) 经过长途飞行, 她感到十分疲倦。
- 8) 他的历史课考试及格了。
- 9) 他的弟弟跟他一样英俊。
- 10) 她在校内有许多朋友。
- 11) 我盼望能见到你。
- 12) 她打算当教师。

(英汉互译答案:)

- 1) 她被送到中央民族大学深造。
- 2) 这个新闻使我们大失所望。
- 3) 他获得了就读牛津大学的奖学金。
- 4) 同你见面, 甚感高兴。
- 5) 他试图倒立起来, 但不行。

- 6) 我们不必告诉她真相；那只会令她不安。
- 7) After a long-distance flight, she felt very tired.
- 8) He passed the history exam.
- 9) His younger brother is as handsome as he.
- 10) She has many friends on campus.
- 11) I'm looking forward to seeing you.
- 12) She intends to become a teacher.

4. Extra reading 的目的为锻炼学生的独立阅读能力。教师宜在课上限时完成，可提出简短的问题让学生口头回答，书中的理解性练习可留给学生自己课后完成。

5. Passage B 为主课文A的补充短文，分别设有阅读理解和句型翻译套写两项练习，其中的重要词汇注释如下：

Passage B的重要词汇注释如下

appropriate *a.* 适当的

e.g. His casual clothes were not appropriate for such a formal occasion.
他的便服不适宜在这样正式的场合穿。

e-mail *n. & v.* (发) 电子邮件

e.g. You may e-mail the draft to your teacher first.
你可以先将草稿用电子邮件发给你的老师。
I've got your e-mail.
我已经收到了你的电子邮件。

encourage *v.* 鼓励

e.g. I encouraged her to work hard and try to pass the examinations.
我鼓励她用功争取考试及格。

face-to-face *a.* 面对面的

e.g. Sometimes you need to have a face-to-face talk with your students.
有时候你必须面对面地和学生们谈心。

faculty *n.* 教学人员

e.g. There is a faculty meeting this afternoon.
下午有一个全体教师会议。

flexible *a.* 有柔性的；灵活的

e.g. A professor can enjoy a flexible schedule in this university.
这所大学的教授可以享有灵活机动的工作时间表。

frequent *a.* 时常发生的

e.g. Rains are frequent here in early summer.
在初夏季节这里常下雨。

institute *v.* 创立

e.g. We are busy instituting a linguistic society.
我们正忙于建立一个语言社团。

instructor *n.* 教师

e.g. He works as a sports instructor.
他是个体育教员。

interact *v.* 互相影响

e.g. Teaching and learning can interact with each other.
教与学可以相互作用/影响。

occur *v.* 发生，出现；闪现于大脑

e.g. Heavy rains occur in summer in this area.
这个地区暴雨出现在夏季。
Suddenly a good idea occurred to me.
突然，一个好主意闪现在我的脑海里。

publish *v.* 出版

e.g. This company publishes children's books.
这个公司出版儿童书籍。

response *n.* 反应

e.g. There is no response to our call for help.
对我们的求援还没有任何反应。

therefore *ad.* 因此

e.g. He has broken his leg and therefore he can't play the game.
他摔坏了腿，因此不能参加比赛了。

6. 本课的Applied Writing 的目的是练习套写英文证书等文件，学生应记住常用的证书词语，包括其比较固定的语言格式和专门用语。

7. 本课的Pick Up Your Grammar 的目的是完成式与过去式的比较。教师还可根据学生的实际水平补充少量短句进行口头语法练习。



VI. 练习答案 (Key to Exercises)

Key to Integrated Skills Development

1. Li Hong is making the call to a British university.
 2. She wants some information about the Chemistry Department in Lancaster University.
 3. He is the secretary of the department.
 4. No, not very expensive.
 5. Yes, he/she has to do so.
 6. Being hard-working, honest, friendly and able to get along well with others.
2. 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. F 6. T 7. F 8. F 9. T 10. T
3. 1. Austria
 2. twenty-two
 3. has graduated
 4. master's
 5. England
 6. Mrs. Clark
 7. campus activities
 8. every week
 9. girls
5. 1. Hold 2. through 3. speaking 4. like 5. ahead
 6. will 7. shall/will 8. as 9. for 10. welcome
6. 1. a. Simon will graduate from a technical school soon.
 b. The students will graduate from the secondary school soon.
 c. My sister will graduate from the college soon.
 2. a. I shall further my study in the college.
 b. They will further their study in this training course.
 c. The boy will further his study in an American university.
 3. a. The girl makes a long-distance call to her parents every month.
 b. He is making a long-distance call to his professor in Beijing now.
 c. We often make a long-distance call to each other.
 4. a. We intend to have a party at my home.
 b. Mr. Smith intends to join the football club in the university.
 c. Lizzy intends to learn Chinese from her classmates.
 5. a. Li Hong tries to give her as much information as she can.
 b. I try to write to my parents as often as I can.

- c. They try to/are trying to finish their work as soon as possible.
6. a. Will it be very competitive to get the job in this company?
b. Will it be very hard to learn English well in a short time?
c. Will it be very useful to read English aloud every morning?
7. a. Old people over 70 do not need to pay to take a train or a ship in this country.
b. You do not need to worry about my health.
c. We do not need to carry all the books with us.
8. a. Mrs. Johnson will be happy to see her son.
b. You will be happy to stay in our guest house.
c. She will be happy to help us with our English.
9. a. Will she have to share a desk with another student?
b. Will you have to ask your teacher to write a reference letter for you?
c. Will they have to work on the problem together?
10. a. The service in the guest house will make the foreign guests very satisfied.
b. The interview will make the candidates quite nervous.
c. The help from the Chinese students will make the overseas students very pleased.
7. 1. passes exams
2. gets along well with
3. on campus
4. makes ... pleased
5. will graduate from
6. intends to
7. as ... as
8. will make a phone call
9. seems to be
10. looking forward to
8. 1. Our bookstore has all kinds of books for students from different parts of the country to buy.
2. You must pass the TOEFL test with good marks.
3. The staff of this company have quite good personal qualities.
4. I get along well with my classmates. This makes my parents very pleased.
5. She intends/wants to further her study abroad after graduation. So do I.
9. 1. a. 我要去首都读博士学位。
b. The couple are going to take a course for their driver's license in the training center.
c. My brother is going to do a volunteer's job in the north-western area for one year.
2. a. 所有这些信息使得秘书很担忧。
b. His résumé makes the company satisfied.
c. The news makes the boss puzzled.
10. 1. b 2. d 3. c 4. b 5. c 6. a
11. 1. are still very common
2. help their students with their problems

3. e-mail and the telephone
 4. interact with their students
 5. face to face
- 12
1. a. 玻璃墙在现代建筑中很常见。
b. Escalators are very common in modern supermarkets.
c. Multi-media classrooms are very common in modern schools.
 2. a. 农民没有机器的时候制造了很多低效率的工具。
b. Telegrams were widely used when people did not have faxes.
c. Raw meat was eaten when human beings did not know how to cook.
 3. a. 现在人们互相联络还有很多别的方式。
b. Now, there are many other ways in which a person can express his opinions to the public.
c. Now, there are many other ways in which a student can get a loan from the bank.
 4. a. 一个人获取最新信息最有效的方法是使用网络。
b. The most popular way for a student to earn extra money is to do a part-time job.
c. The best way for young people to understand their parents is to communicate with them.

Key to Applied Writing

1

Identity Card	
Name	Sun Yanli
Sex.....	Female
Nationality.....	Han
Date of Birth.....	1993/4/12
Address.....	112 Xi'an Road, Shenyang
Issuing Date.....	2008/5/5
NO.	220124199304120338

2

DIPLOMA	NO. 026
This is to certify that Li Jia, female, aged 23, a native from Beijing, who was admitted to the Mathematics Department in September, 2006, has completed the four years' courses and, having satisfied all the requirements set by the syllabus, graduated from Huaxia University.	PHOTO Huaxia University (Seal) (signature) Chancellor Date: July 1, 2010

Key to Pick Up Your Grammar

1. I have been to Beijing many times.
2. When I told her the good news, she jumped with joy.
3. He has been in the army for ten years.
4. She has been living in China since she was twelve.
5. They always went swimming in the river when they were children.
6. This is the first time that I have felt so relaxed for months.
7. She left Dalian a long time ago.
8. Sally has changed a lot since she came to the university.



VII. 课文参考译文 (Text Translation for Reference)

对话 A: “我可以问你几个问题吗?”

一个中国学生李红将很快大学毕业。她打算到英国兰卡斯特大学继续学习深造。现在她正在给这个大学打长途电话。

接待员: 这里是兰卡斯特大学。请问有事吗?

李红: 是的。我想了解一些关于贵校化学系的情况。

接待员: 请等一下。我给您接通系秘书的电话。

秘书: 早上好! 我是诺曼·格林。

李红: 早上好, 格林先生。我叫李红。我想到贵系继续学习深造。我可以问您几个问题吗? 喂! 喂! 您在听吗?

秘书: 当然, 请讲吧。

对话 B: 谢谢您的帮助

李红问了那位秘书几个关于学费的问题。那位秘书尽可能地给她提供了帮助。

李红: 在你们系学习学费贵吗?

秘书: 不, 不太贵。学生的家长不必是有钱人。我们也有奖学金给学生提供帮助。

李红: 噢, 好的。我的父母听到这一点会很高兴的。但是我怎么才能得到奖学金呢? 我得以优异成绩通过某些考试吗?

秘书: 是的, 你得考得好。但是也看你的个人素质。比如, 你得学习刻苦, 为人正直, 待人友善。你也需要能够和来自不同文化背景的学生和睦相处。

李红: 我明白了。非常感谢您的帮助。

秘书: 不必客气, 我希望你会很快寄来申请表。

李红: 我会的。我期待着在英国与您见面。再见。

秘书: 我也是。再见。

短文 A: 寄宿帮工女学生

玛丽来自奥地利。她22岁，刚刚从她国家的大学毕业。她打算在伦敦攻读硕士学位。玛丽的父母不怎么富裕，所以玛丽要当一名寄宿帮工女学生来资助自己上学。在此期间她将和克拉克一家住在一起。克拉克一家有两个小女孩。她们需要玛丽的帮助。玛丽在业余时间将要帮助克拉克夫人在家里洗餐具、铺床、摆餐桌、清扫房间、接电话和购物等。她平时正常上课：上午9点到11点，下午从2点到5点。晚上她也有空参加一些校内活动。玛丽每周将得到一些零花钱。克拉克夫妇也会很高兴帮助她学英语。所有这些使得玛丽很高兴。她将和这个英国家庭相处得很愉快。

短文 B: 答疑时间

现在多数大学里通常仍安排有答疑时间，这是在教师还没有电话或电子邮件的时候设立的。答疑时间其实就是公布出来告诉学生老师们何时能在办公室里接受答疑的时间。现在，教师们有多种别的办法和学生们互相沟通。因此，学校鼓励教师减少死板的答疑时间，同时用更加灵活机动的办法与学生们接触。

对于学生来说，得到教师辅导最灵活的方式莫过于使用电子邮件了。学生们无需等待规定的答疑时间，教师定期阅读学生的电子邮件并及时给学生们提供反馈。师生间最常用同时也是最有效的联络方式是通过电子邮件和互联网新闻小组。

当然，有一些事情仍然需要面对面的沟通。如果学生无法在规定的答疑时间里去见老师，他只需通过电子邮件或电话与老师约一个更适当的时间就行了。

高等教育出版社

Unit

4

Tourist Information



I. 教学时间分配 (Time Allocation)

本单元共需4~5学时，对话1学时；课文A及练习2~3学时，课文B、语法等1学时（教师可根据本课内容的难易程度稍作增减）。Extra reading的目的为锻炼学生的独立阅读能力。教师宜在课上限时完成，可提出简短的问题让学生口头回答，书中的理解性练习可留给学生自己课后完成。



II. 教学目的与要求 (Aims and Requirements)

I 内容重点 (Language Focus)

1. 交际重点 (Communicative Focus)

向旅行社查询有关旅行的信息，涉及机票确认、航班时间及各种旅行方式。

2. 重点训练单词和词组 (Focal Words and Expressions)

attendant, charter, conference, fly, coach, confirm, check, hostel, lift, opposite, order, recommend, reserve, sort, tour, travel, go on

3. 重点句型和习惯表达法 (Focal Functions and Patterns)

- A. At a travel agency
- 1) When do you plan/want to fly?
 - 2) Where do you plan/want to fly to?
- B. Asking about flights
- 1) Is there a flight from Beijing to London this Saturday?
 - 2) What's the flight number?
 - 3) How can I get to the airport?
 - 4) When does the plane for London leave/depart?
 - 5) When should I be at the airport?
 - 6) When should I check in?
 - 7) When will I arrive in London?
 - 8) Do you want to fly first or economy class?
 - 9) What's the exact air fare?
 - 10) Can you confirm my ticket, please?
- C. Tourist information
- 1) Can you give me any information about tours?
 - 2) What would you like to see?
 - 3) Would you like to go by coach or by train?
 - 4) I wonder if I can use my travelers' cheques.
 - 5) I'd like to take a half-day tour around the city. What do you have available?
 - 6) When do we leave?/How about Monday?/Can you be ready by 8:00 a.m.?
 - 7) Would you like to join a conducted tour of the city?
 - 8) What are the places of historical interest?
 - 9) What are the famous beauty spots in the surrounding countries?

II 技能要求 (Skills Development)

1 听说 (Listening and Speaking)

要求学生熟读对话与课文，背诵课文对话语句，并能就课文内容进行问答。

2 读译 (Reading and Translating)

要求学生能读懂有关旅游信息方面的英语文章，并能回答相关的阅读理解练习。

3 写 (Applied Writing)

- A. 鼓励学生用学过的单词、词组以书面形式表述自己乘飞机观光游览的经历。
- B. 了解旅游广告的基本写作格式。



III. 背景资料 (Background Information)

美国的旅游业 (Tourism in the United States)

Americans are fond of traveling within their own country, and the 50 states remain the most potent tourist attractions for US citizens. They have become important goals for visitors from overseas as well. In 2005, the US Customs and Border Protection (CBP) cleared 86 million foreign travelers into the US by air, reaching the highest number in history. In addition, CBP cleared over 26 million passengers and crew from seagoing vessels. Like Americans, foreign tourists visit the national parks, the big cities — chief among them, New York — and the theme parks; but they also hope to find vestiges of the Old West in Kansas, Indian ceremonials in Nebraska, and thoroughbred horse farms in Kentucky. The major attraction for foreign tourists, however, is the cheap US dollar, with which they can buy accommodations and merchandise at prices far lower than they would pay in their own countries.

Tourism is the most important industry overall in Hawaii and constitutes the first, second, or third most important industry in most of the 50 states in terms of the number of people employed in it.

高等教育出版社



IV. 语言点 (Language Points)

I 课文补充注释 (Notes to Dialogues and Passage A)

1. At the moment he's at a travel agent's.

现在他在一家旅行社。

表示某些机构、店铺或某人的家时，可用名词所有格并省略后面的名词。

e.g. the butcher's 肉铺, the hairdresser's 理发店, the Smith's 史密斯家

Would you mind going to the chemist's for me?

替我到药店去一趟好吗?

I've got an appointment at the dentist's at 11 a.m.

我上午11点在牙科诊所有个预约。

I'm staying at my aunt's.

我现在住在姨妈家。

It is now a fruiterer's.

现在这是一家水果店了。

2. There is a flight tomorrow afternoon at 2 o'clock. Please check in no later than 12 o'clock.

明天下午2点有一个航班。请在12点前来检票。

check in和check out表示“办理进/出某处的手续”，如在hotel，则含义为“办理入住/离店手续”，在机场check in则表示“办理登机手续”，也即“办理进入机场候机室手续”。

e.g. He checked in at the hotel as soon as he arrived in the city.

他一到该市马上到旅馆登记入住。

You must check in at the airport an hour before your plane leaves.

你必须在飞机起飞前1小时到机场办理登机手续。

3. — What's the flight number?

— It's CA937.

— 航班号是多少？

— 是CA937号航班。

CA是中国国际航空股份有限公司Air China Limited (简称“Air China”)的缩写，又如：

PA或PAWA (Pan American World Airways Inc.) 泛美世界航空公司的缩写；

TWA (Trans World Airlines) 美国环球航空公司的缩写；

JAL (Japan Airlines) 日本航空公司的缩写；

BA (British Airways) 英国航空公司的缩写。

4. By the way, all my money is in travelers' cheques, I'm afraid.

顺便问一下，我的钱都是旅行支票的形式，怎么办？

travelers' cheque: cheque for a fixed amount, sold to travelers by a bank, etc. and easily cashed in foreign countries 旅行支票

5. — Thanks a lot.

— It's my pleasure.

— 非常感谢。

— 很高兴为您服务。(我很乐意能帮上忙。)

It's my pleasure 等于说You are welcome, 不客气，但比You are welcome要客气，也可以说My pleasure, 或者With pleasure.

e.g. — Thank you for helping me.

— It's my pleasure/My pleasure.

— 谢谢您帮忙。

— 不客气。

6. "Package Holidays" are becoming more and more popular.

“包团旅游”越来越流行。

package tour又作package holiday: a completely planned holiday at a fixed price arranged by a

travel agency, which includes travel, hotels, meals, etc. (全程由旅行社安排且费用固定的) 包团旅游, 包价旅游

e.g. In a package holiday, a travel agency will book the hotel, order the food and charter the plane for the travelers.

在包团旅游中, 旅行社为游客预订旅馆、饭菜并包租飞机。

Package holidays are usually rather cheap, so they are popular.

包价旅游一般比较便宜, 所以受人欢迎。

7. Some people say you do not see very much of the country you go to.

有人说, 这种方式度假能看到的当地风光很有限。

... the country you go to 中省略了关系代词 that/which 和动词 see。完整的应为 Some people say you do not see very much of the country that/which you go to see.

II 词汇用法 (Word Usage)

attendant *n.* a person whose job is to provide a service in a public place 服务员; 接待员

e.g. The attendant at the hotel asked Mr. Benson what he would like to see.

宾馆服务员问本森先生想到哪些地方去参观。

Jane works as a museum attendant.

珍妮在一家博物馆当接待员。

charter *v.* to hire a plane, etc. for a particular purpose 包租 (飞机、汽车等)

e.g. The travel agency chartered a plane for its tourists.

这家旅行社为其游客包租了飞机。

Has the big company chartered the ship for its staff yet?

这家大公司已经为他们的员工包租轮船了吗?

Synonym: **hire** *v.* to get the use of (something) for a special occasion or a limited time on payment of a sum of money 租用

e.g. We hired a car for a week when we were in Beijing.

我们在北京时租了一辆汽车用了一个星期。

Did you hire that flat?

你租那套房子了吗?

“短期租用”用 hire, “出租”用 hire out。

e.g. Let's hire a car for the weekend.

让我们去租一辆汽车周末用。

Why don't you hire out your car to your neighbor while you are away, and earn some money?

外出期间何不把汽车租给邻居赚几个钱呢?

coach *n.* a comfortable bus used for long-distance travel or touring 长途公共汽车; 大型游览车

e.g. We went to Beijing by coach.

我们乘长途汽车去北京。

This hotel welcomes coach parties.

这家旅馆欢迎乘旅游车来的旅游团。

confirm *v.* to give support or certainty to a fact, belief, statement, etc. 证实；确认

e.g. Please confirm your telephone message by letter.

请来信确认你在电话上所说的事。

The expression on her face confirmed what we had expected.

她脸上的表情证实了我们的判断。

check *v.* to test, examine, or mark to see if something is correct, true, in good condition, etc.

检查；核对；查验

e.g. Their bags were checked by security guards as they entered the building.

他们进入大楼时，保安人员检查了他们的提包。

She read the letter through before sending it, checking for spelling mistakes.

她发信前把信从头到尾查看了一遍，看有没有拼写错误。

He checked the gas every time before leaving home.

他每次出门前都要查一下煤气。

Check to see if the students have memorized the dialogue.

看看学生们对话背会了没有。

fly *v.* travel in an aircraft or a spacecraft; transport (goods or passengers) in an aircraft 飞行，

航行；空运

e.g. I can hear a plane flying overhead.

我听见一架飞机从上空飞过。

Five hundred people flew to Paris.

500人乘飞机去了巴黎。

conference *n.* a formal meeting between people who share the same business interests or belong to the same political party, which is held so that opinions and ideas can be exchanged 会议，协商会，讨论会

e.g. Many international conferences are held in Paris.

许多国际会议在巴黎举行。

The director is in conference now.

主任正在开会。

Synonym: meet, conference, congress, meeting

meet 集会，会。多用于AmE，主要指许多人集在一起进行体育运动方面的竞赛，亦指文艺方面的集会。

e.g. We have decided to put off the sports meet till Friday.

我们决定把运动会推迟到星期五。

A singing meet will take place next week.

下周将举行歌咏会。

conference 会议，讨论会。指为交换各种观点、意见或讨论某些共同关心的问题而举行的专业性集会或定期的会议。

e.g. Many international conferences have been held in Geneva.

许多国际会议在日内瓦召开。

The conference of heart specialists was held in New York.

心脏专家的研讨会在纽约举行。

congress 会议。指代表大会，其代表均来自国内或国际的各类组织，目的是解决重大的国内、国际政治、军事、教育等方面的问题，也可指交流情况、交换意见的会议。在美国指国会。

e.g. The next youth congress will meet in Shanghai.

下一届青年代表大会将在上海召开。

The United States Congress handles over 200 bills a session.

美国国会一届会议处理200项议案。

meeting 会议，集会。普通用词。可指任何有组织、有领导、公开或私下的各种集会。这种集会常常在室内举行，目的是商讨议案、作出决定等。

e.g. They are having a meeting now.

他们正在开会。

The meeting with old friends was a happy one.

老友相逢十分愉快。

hostel *n.* a building in which certain types of people can stay and eat, such as students, young people working away from home, etc. 廉价旅店

e.g. Youth hostels are popular among young people.

青年招待所受到青年人的欢迎。

The youth hostel is run by students themselves.

这个青年招待所由学生自己经营。

Synonym: inn, hotel, motel

inn 客栈，旅馆。多指规模较小，设备简陋，既供应饮食，又兼营住宿的旅馆，一般均开设于乡间或公路旁。但现代的大旅店也有用inn命名的，如Holiday Inn。

e.g. The traveler happened to find a roadside inn.

旅行者偶然在路旁发现了一个小客栈。

He keeps an inn there.

他在那里开了一个小旅店。

hotel 旅馆，宾馆。指开设于城市的，建筑风格现代化，规模较大，设备相对较齐全并能提供饮食或娱乐等的宾馆酒店。

e.g. The hotel is fitted up with modern comforts.

这家宾馆配备有舒适的现代化设施。

The new luxury hotel has over five hundred bedrooms.

这家新建的豪华酒店拥有500多间客房。

motel 汽车游客旅馆系motor hotel的混合缩写词。指附有停车场设施的旅馆。多开设于公路旁供人们开车在此落脚，规模可大可小。

e.g. The motel had a television in each room.

这家汽车旅馆每个房间都有电视机。

There is not any motel, not even an inn in the small village.

这小村子里没有汽车旅馆，甚至连一家小客栈也没有。

lift *n.* 1) an apparatus in a building for taking people and goods from one floor to another
电梯

e.g. He pressed the button to call the lift.

他按下按钮要电梯。

He took the lift to the fifteenth floor.

他乘电梯到了第十五层楼。

2) a free ride in a private vehicle 搭便车

e.g. Can I give you a lift home?

你搭我的车回家好吗？

He gave me a lift to the station.

他让我搭他的车去车站。

opposite *a.* facing the other way; altogether different; across from or facing 相对的，对面的；对立的，相反的

e.g. You are not allowed to park the car opposite the bank.

不允许将车停在银行的对面。

The result of the experiment was opposite to that intended.

这个试验的结果和预期的相反。

order *v.* 1) give an order to sb; command 命令（某人）；吩咐

2) request sb to supply or make (goods, etc.) 订购；定做；预订

3) request sb to bring (food, drink, etc.) in a hotel, restaurant, etc. (在旅馆，饭店等)点(饭菜、饮料等)

e.g. The doctor ordered me to stay in bed.

医生吩咐我卧床。

The boy was ordered out of the room.

那个男孩被命令离开房间。

I ordered an English-Chinese dictionary online.

我在网上订购了一本英汉词典。

She ordered a new bike for her son on his birthday.

她为儿子的生日订购了一辆新自行车。

Would you order now, sir?

先生您可以点菜了吗？

I've ordered you a bottle of beer.

我给您点了一瓶啤酒。

Synonym: tell, order, instruct, direct, command

tell是用得最广的词，语气不太强，是日常生活用词，用于“告诉，让”人做某事。**order**语气较强，为权威者用于命令别人服从。**instruct**与**direct**意为对需采取的行动有准确说明，这两个词均用于正式场合，前者的含义是“说明，指示”，后者则表示“指导，指示”。**command**主要用于军事场合。

e.g. My teacher told me not to be late for class next time.

老师告诉我下次不要迟到。

Mother keeps telling her son to cut his hair but he takes no notice.

妈妈再三告诉儿子去理发，但他就是不听。

The policeman ordered the driver to stop.

警察命令司机停车。

The judge ordered the prisoner to stand up.

法官命令犯人站起来。

I'm instructed to inform you that the president is not willing to make a statement.

我奉命通知你们，总统不想发表声明。

The judge directed the defendant to answer.

法官责令被告回答。

The officer commanded his men to open fire.

军官命令士兵开火。

Do what I command.

照我的命令去做。

in order/out of order (not) able to be used 妥当的，能用的/不能用的，坏了

e.g. Is your passport in order (is still valid)?

你的护照仍然有效吗？

My watch is out of order.

我的手表坏了。

recommend *v.* to praise or commend; to advise or counsel 推荐，介绍；劝告，建议或忠告

e.g. She recommended that we (should) take a train instead of a coach there.

她建议我们乘火车而不是长途汽车去那里。

Can you recommend a good secretary to me?

你能给我介绍一个好的秘书吗？

This restaurant has nothing to recommend.

这家餐馆没有什么可吸引人的。

reserve *v.* to keep for future use or for a special purpose; retain 收藏，保留；保持

n. the act of reserving, sth kept or saved 保留的行为；储备物

e.g. I think you can reserve the right to disagree.

我认为你有保留持不同意见的权利。

Now we should reserve our strength for the new term.

现在让我们为新学期养精蓄锐吧。

All rights (are) reserved.

保留所有权利。(版权所有, 不许翻印。)

A table has been reserved for them in that big restaurant.

已经在那家大餐馆为他们预订了一张桌子。

sort *n.* group or class of people or things (which are alike in some way); type

类, 种类, 类别

e.g. He'll never do this sort of thing he doesn't like.

他决不会干他不喜欢干的事。

What sort of dictionary do you need?

你需要的是哪一种字典?

Synonym: **kind, sort**

kind 种类。普通用语, 指具有共同特性的同一类人或事物。

e.g. There are many kinds of hamburgers in the restaurant.

餐馆里有各种口味的汉堡。

I don't like that kind of book.

我不喜欢那种书。

sort 种类。着重指大体相同的一组人或事物, 比kind更口语化, 有时可换用, 更多地具有主观判断的色彩, 常含轻蔑的意味。

e.g. There are all sorts of books in the library.

图书馆里有各种书籍。

I don't like that sort of boy.

我不喜欢那种孩子。

tour *v.* to travel from place to place, especially for pleasure 观光, 从一地旅行到另一地, 尤指为了娱乐

n. a trip with visits to various places of interest for business, pleasure, or instruction 旅游, 为了公务、娱乐或教育游览名胜的旅行

e.g. We went on a tour of the city last autumn.

我们去年秋天游览了这座城市。

The famous pianist is on a concert tour in Asia.

这位著名的钢琴家正在亚洲作巡回表演。

Synonym: **travel, journey, trip**

travel 旅行, 游历; 移动。表示从一处到另一处的最普通的词。

e.g. He came home after years of foreign travel.

他在国外游走了多年之后才回到家里。

Did you go to Rome during your travels?

你在旅行中去过罗马吗?

journey 是指从一地到另一地有具体目的旅行，一般指单程旅行。

e.g. At the moment my car is being made ready for a long journey.

眼下我的车子正在检修，准备长途旅行。

Our journey to England took only a few hours because we traveled by plane.

我们去英国的旅程只花了几个小时，因为我们是乘飞机去的。

trip 旅行，远足。普通用语，多指短途旅行，且要返回出发地，其目的可以是公务或娱乐。

e.g. The trip can be done comfortably in five days.

这次旅行有5天时间就可以玩得很舒服了。

They took a trip around the world last year.

他们去年周游了全球。

go on 1) to take place or happen 发生；进行

2) to continue without stopping 继续

e.g. What's going on over there?

那边发生什么事啦？

There is a party going on in our classroom.

我们正在教室开晚会。

Let's go on with Lesson 2.

让我们继续学习第2课。

Go on, I'm listening.

说下去吧，我听着呢。



高等教育出版社

V. 练习指导及补充练习 (Guide to Exercises and Supplementary Exercises)

1. Check your understanding 的目的是检验学生对有关对话及短文的理解，教师应注意引导学生用自己的语言回答，并围绕这些练习就对话与课文的内容与词汇、句型等用法进行口头训练，不要把它们只作为理解练习使用。

补充练习如下：

For Dialogue A

Are the following statements true (T) or false (F) according to Dialogue A?

- 1) Mike Hunter comes from Britain.
- 2) Now he is at an international medical conference in Canada.
- 3) He is flying to London tomorrow.

- 4) His flight number is JAL927.
- 5) He should check in two hours before the plane leaves.
- 6) The plane will arrive in London at 4 a.m.
- 7) The bus can take him to the airport.
- 8) Buses go to the airport every ten minutes.
- 9) The assistant has bought the ticket for Mike Hunter.
- 10) Perhaps he is satisfied with the service he received.

答案:

- 1) F 2) F 3) T 4) F 5) T
6) F 7) T 8) T 9) T 10) T

For Dialogue B

Answer the following questions briefly according to Dialogue B.

- 1) Where does Rod Benson come from? (America.)
- 2) Where is he staying? (At a hotel in Beijing.)
- 3) He is asking about tourist information in Beijing, isn't he? (Yes, he is.)
- 4) What place is Rod going to visit? (The Great Wall.)
- 5) How is he going there? (By coach.)
- 6) Has he brought a lot of cash with him? (No, he hasn't.)
- 7) Who can help him with the money problem? (The attendant.)

For Passage A

Answer the following questions briefly according to Passage A.

- 1) What is the passage about? (Holidays.)
- 2) Why do people prefer a package holiday? (Because it is cheap.)
- 3) Does everybody like a package holiday? (I'm afraid not.)
- 4) Why? (Some people say you don't see very much of the country you go to.)
- 5) Where do young people often stay if they travel abroad? (Youth hostels or some other cheap places they like.)

2. Learn to communicate 的目的是对本课重点句型的总结归纳, 此外口语中常见的句子还有:

Talking about flights

- 1) I'm leaving for London next week.
- 2) I'm flying to New York tomorrow.
- 3) How can I get a ticket?
- 4) Go to the booking office.
- 5) You can get a ticket at the booking office.
- 6) When does the plane for Beijing leave/depart?
- 7) It leaves/departs at 10 a.m. every day.
- 8) Is there a flight from London to Tokyo?

- 9) What's the flight number?
- 10) It's CA947/JAL747/PA282/BA325.
- 11) When should I check in?
- 12) Please be at the airport at least one hour before departure.
- 13) Please check in one hour before the plane departs.
- 14) Do you want to fly first or economy class?
- 15) I want a first-class ticket (economy-class ticket).
- 16) Can you confirm my ticket, please?
- 17) Yes, sir. There is a flight tomorrow afternoon at 2 o'clock.

Asking for tourist information

- 1) Can you give me any information about tours?
- 2) Yes, sir. I can even arrange a tour for you if you want me to.
- 3) What would you like to see?
- 4) I'd like to go to the Great Wall.
- 5) Would you like to go by coach or by train?
- 6) What do you recommend?
- 7) My advice is to go by coach.
- 8) I'd like to take a half-day tour of the city.
- 9) What do you have available?
- 10) We have two half-day tours daily.
- 11) What are the places of historical interest?
- 12) What are the famous beauty spots in the surrounding countries?

3. Build up your language stock 的目的是为了进一步巩固本课所学的生词和短语，教师可以在学生朗读记忆的基础上，再进行下列补充练习。练习9（句型套用）是为学生学习掌握本课重要句型专门补充编写的。这种句型套用练习可引导学生深入理解句子结构及其精妙之处，并在此基础上模拟套用这些句型，学习效果十分显著。因此教师要作为重点练习在课上引导学生完成这一练习，还可要求他们在练习的基础上背诵这些句型。

词汇补充练习：

(汉译英：)

- 1) 他正在向一位服务员询问中国民航的情况。(attendant)
- 2) 旅客应该在飞机出港前一小时检票。(check in)
- 3) 旅行支票曾经很受人们的欢迎。(travelers' cheques)
- 4) 因为团体旅游既方便又便宜，所以越来越受欢迎。(package tours)
- 5) 此刻他正住在一家青年招待所。(at the moment)
- 6) 那家旅行社的工作人员建议迈克·亨特乘长途汽车去长城。(recommend)

- 7) 人民公园离这儿不远，您可以走着去。(walk all the way)
- 8) 我想确定一下我的航班号是多少？(confirm)
- 9) 现在出国旅游的人越来越多了。(these days)
- 10) 下周罗德将乘飞机去东京参加一个国际医学会议。(fly)

(汉译英答案:)

- 1) He is asking the attendant for some information about Civil Aviation Administration of China (CAAC).
- 2) Tourists should check in an hour before the plane leaves.
- 3) Travelers' cheques were very popular.
- 4) Package tours are both convenient and cheap, so they are becoming more and more popular.
- 5) At the moment he is staying at a youth hostel.
- 6) The travel agent recommended that Mike Hunter should go to the Great Wall by coach.
- 7) The People's Park is not far from here. You can walk all the way there.
- 8) Can I confirm my flight number?
- 9) These days more and more people travel abroad.
- 10) Next week Rod will fly to Tokyo to attend an international medical conference.

4. Extra reading 的目的是锻炼学生的独立阅读能力。教师宜在课上限时完成，可提出简短的问题让学生口头回答，书中的理解性练习可留给学生自己课后完成。

5. Passage B 为主课文A的补充短文，分别设有阅读理解和句型翻译套写两项练习，其中的重要词汇注释如下：

Passage B的重要词汇注释如下

bit *n.* 一点点，零碎

e.g. There's a little bit of time left for me.

我只剩一点儿时间了。

He tries to read the English book bit by bit.

他试着一点一点地读这本英语书。

brochure *n.* 小册子；说明书

e.g. Where can I get a holiday brochure?

我在哪儿能搞到一份假日指南？

broke *a.* 一文不名的

e.g. The businessman has gone broke.

这个商人已经破产了。

corner *n.* 角落; 绝境

e.g. The bookshelf stood at the corner of the room.
书架在房间的角上。

fantastic *a.* 奇妙的

e.g. I'm still recalling that fantastic trip to Europe.
我仍然在回味那次美好的欧洲之旅。

pick *v.* 采集; 开车接人

e.g. They were picking cotton.
他们在采棉花。
I'll come to pick you up at about 4:00 o'clock.
我大约在4点开车来接你。

save *v.* 攒钱; 储蓄

e.g. He is saving for a new car.
他正在为买一辆新车攒钱。

site *n.* 位置; 场地

e.g. The site of the new hotel is by the sea.
这座新旅馆坐落于大海之滨。

stuff *n.* 原料; 东西

e.g. There's some white stuff in the bag.
这个包里有些白色的东西。

tent *n.* 帐篷

e.g. I went into her tent to drink a cup of tea with milk.
我进了她的帐篷去喝一杯奶茶。

6. 本课的Applied Writing 介绍旅游广告的语言特点, 包括变换字体和字号, 使用令人意外的语言逻辑, 语言简洁生动等。

7. 本课的Pick Up Your Grammar 为复习被动语态的现在式。教师还可根据学生的实际水平补充少量短句进行口头语法练习。



VI. 练习答案 (Key to Exercises)

Key to Integrated Skills Development

1. Canadian.
2. To attend an international medical conference.
3. London.
4. At least one hour before the plane leaves.
5. By bus.
6. Opposite the travel agent's.
7. Every ten minutes.
8. Yes, he did.
2. 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. F 6. T 7. F 8. F 9. T 10. T
3. 1. d 2. b 3. c
5. (Open)
6. 1. g 2. a 3. j 4. e 5. h
6. d 7. i 8. f 9. c 10. b
7. 1. traveler
2. tourist
3. cheques/checks
4. arranged
5. tour
6. checked in
7. advice
8. information
9. recommend
10. At the moment
11. flight
12. coach
8. 1. Package tours are becoming more and more popular.
2. The travel agency charts the plane, reserves the hotel rooms and orders the food for the tourists.
3. The tourists are going abroad tomorrow.
4. Their holidays are not very expensive, either.
5. Sometimes young people get lifts.
9. 1. a. 这就是为什么这个地方被称作粮仓的原因。

- b. That is why this period is called the golden week.
c. That is why he is called the walking dictionary of our department.
2. a. 这就是许多老人看待时尚的方式。
b. That is how Chinese people treat foreign friends now.
c. That is how most parents deal with the only-child problems now.
- 10** 1. He was born in Qufu.
2. In Confucius' honor.
3. It was small and had only three rooms.
4. In the guesthouse.
5. The modern visitors.
- 11** 1. She is expecting to go away on a camping holiday this year.
2. Not yet.
3. At the moment they are looking at a lot of brochures and trying to decide on the trip.
4. They will need a whole lot of camping stuff.
5. They will travel by air and by bus.
6. They will be away for five weeks.
7. By selling his aunt's furniture.
8. They will fly first to South America.
- 12** 1. a. 他们这时正在叫嚷争论，想解决彼此间的分歧。
b. The policemen are searching the building at the moment and trying to catch the thief.
c. The students are surfing the Internet at the moment and trying to find the information they need.
2. a. 事实上，我们正在考虑在矿产资源、电子通信和其他领域里的合作。
b. As a matter of fact, more visitors are coming to visit our city this year.
c. As a matter of fact, they are discussing how to expand the sales of their products.
3. a. 这当然会是一次有意义的会面，不过我们得取消之前的约会。
b. It'll be a rewarding experience, of course, but it's going to take half a year.
c. It'll be a wonderful holiday, of course, but somebody has to take my job.
4. a. 你看，你先要参加有关东方文化的会议，然后游览颐和园。
b. You see, he'll be enjoying the golden beach in San Francisco and then sitting in a plane to Tokyo.
c. You see, we'll be having dinner with some top executives from their company and then walking and shopping at Wangfujing Street.

Key to Pick Up Your Grammar

- Such books are usually written for children.
- This company is run by my uncle.
- Are we required to be present at 8 o'clock?
- David and I are not placed in the same class.

5. Those flowers are usually planted in the garden.
6. History is created by people.
7. I am often asked to do this work by my boss.
8. Why is he called a walking dictionary?



VII. 课文参考译文 (Text Translation for Reference)

对话 A: 在旅行社

麦克·亨特是来自加拿大的一位年轻医生。他来北京参加一个国际医学会议。明天要飞往伦敦。现在他在一家旅行社。

麦克·亨特：我明天要飞往伦敦，请你确认一下票好吗？

服务员：好的。明天下午2点有一个航班。请在12点前来检票。

麦克·亨特：航班号是多少？

服务员：CA937。

麦克·亨特：我什么时候到伦敦？

服务员：你大约当地时间下午5点到伦敦。

麦克·亨特：我怎么到机场去呢？

服务员：你可以坐公共汽车去。车站就在对面。每10分钟就有一班车。给您票，先生。都办好了。

麦克·亨特：非常感谢。

服务员：不客气。

对话 B: 旅游信息

罗德·本森是美国人。他住在北京的一家酒店。他正在询问首都旅游的有关信息。

罗德：请提供一些旅游信息好吗？

服务员：当然可以，先生。如果您愿意，我甚至可以为您的安排一次旅游。您想参观什么呢？

罗德：我想看看长城。

服务员：您想坐汽车还是坐火车去？

罗德：你看怎么去好？

服务员：我建议您坐汽车去。

罗德：那么我就坐汽车。顺便说一下，我的钱都是旅行支票的形式，怎么办？

服务员：我可以给您兑换，先生。

罗德：非常感谢。

服务员：很高兴为您服务。

短文 A: 度假

“包团旅游”越来越流行。这些人选择的就是一种度假方式。旅行社为他们预订好飞机、旅馆，甚至饭菜。因此这种度假方式被称之为“包团旅游”。通常这种度假很便宜。这可能是为什么这种度假这么流行的原因。但是，不是每一个人都喜欢这种度假方式。有人说，这种方式度假能看到的当地风光很有限。

一些年轻人也到国外旅游。但是，他们不选择“包团旅游”。而且他们的度假方式花钱也不多。他们很可能大部分旅途要徒步旅行，有时搭搭便车。他们住在青年招待所，有时他们甚至在公园或田野里露宿过夜。现在，很多年轻人选择这种方式周游世界。

短文 B: 攒钱度假

度假？我希望今年我们能到一个露营地度假。我们现在正在翻看大量的旅游手册以便作决定。我们得准备全套的野营器具。我们得要一顶帐篷和其他所有零碎的东西。我们担心会花很多钱。我想我们得节省点。就这些。

事实上，我们计划坐公共汽车旅行。唯一的麻烦是，这意味着我们得外出5周。这会是一次绝妙的旅行，但花销也会相当可观。我们后半生将分文全无。不过，还会有我丈夫卖他姑姑的家具所得的钱，可以用来支付车费。你看，我们要先飞往南美，然后在秘鲁搭乘公共汽车。

高等教育出版社

Unit

5

Traveling in China (I)



I. 教学时间分配 (Time Allocation)

本单元共需4~5学时，对话1学时；课文A及练习2~3学时，课文B、语法等1学时（教师可根据本课内容的难易程度稍作增减）。Extra reading的目的为锻炼学生的独立阅读能力。教师宜在课上限时完成，可提出简短的问题让学生口头回答，书中的理解性练习可留给学生自己课后完成。



II. 教学目的与要求 (Aims and Requirements)

I 内容重点 (Language Focus)

1. 交际重点 (Communicative Focus)

学习关于旅游的英语句子，如怎样订房间，怎样询问房价，怎样填表，同时学会询问景点安排等旅游信息。

2. 重点训练单词和词组 (Focal Words and Expressions)

aim, amount, approach, area, arrange, bear, bet, category, conduct, considerable, detail, establish,

general, impressive, internal, perfectly, plan, related, require, spirit, specific, square, twice, fill in, have a good stay, on holiday, fall into, in advance, at the very start

3. 重点句型和习惯表达法 (Focal Functions and Patterns)

A. Finding accommodation

- 1) Can I help you?
I'd like a room, please.
- 2) Single or double (room)?
Single/Double, please.
- 3) For how long?/For one (two, three ...) night (s)?
For ... night(s).
- 4) With bath or with shower?
With bath/shower, please.
- 5) Could/Can you register, please?/Can/Could you fill in the form, please?
Yes, of course.
- 6) Your room number is ...
Have a good stay./Have a good time.
Thank you./Thanks./Thanks a lot.

B. Talking about tours

- 1) How did you enjoy the tour?/How did you find your stay in China?/How did you like the food?/What did you think of the service?/What was the weather like?/What about travel by coach?
- 2) It was wonderful/impressive/exciting/fascinating/disappointing/tiring.
- 3) What did you see there?/How did you spend your holiday?/Where did you go?

II 技能要求 (Skills Development)

1 听说 (Listening and Speaking)

要求学生能熟读对话与课文，背诵课文及对话语句；能听懂教师提出的有关旅游的问题并能用英语做出简要的回答。

2 读译 (Reading and Translating)

要求学生能读懂有关旅游信息的英语短文，并能完成相关的阅读理解练习；训练学生英汉互译包含重点词语或结构的句子，培养学生的英语表达能力。

3 写 (Applied Writing)

- A. 能使用所学词汇、句型和语法写出有关询问旅游食宿、房价以及景点安排的英文语句。
- B. 了解旅游日程安排的基本写作形式。



III. 背景资料 (Background Information)

1 中国的旅游业 (Tourism in China)

So far China has designated 99 cities as famous historical and cultural cities of the nation, and placed 750 cultural relics under key protection. There are also 119 national scenic and tourist resorts across the land. Nineteen Chinese scenes and sights have appeared on the UNESCO list of world natural and cultural heritages. China's long history and splendid culture have left the land a great wealth of cultural relics and treasures. Beijing, Xi'an, Nanjing, Luoyang, Kaifeng, Hangzhou and An'yang are known as the nation's seven major ancient capitals.

The Chinese folklore is rich and varied. More than 40 Chinese festivals are known throughout the world. Not a month passes without a festival being observed among one ethnic group or another. The Beijing Opera, Chinese acrobatics, music and dance, and traditional Chinese painting and calligraphy — all these never fail to bring immense joy to visitors from all over the world.

2 美国的5种常用的信用卡

Credit cards are issued by banks or certain organizations and may be used by the holders to have purchases charged to a bank account. The account is debited for the corresponding amounts and the card holder is sent monthly statements of account.

In the USA, payment by credit card is more widespread than payment by check. The five major credit cards are: American Express, Carte Blanche, Diners Club, Master and Visa.

美国的5种常用的信用卡是:

- 1) American Express美国运通卡, 是由美国运通公司 (American Express Company) 发行的信用卡, 它可以在全世界大多数国家第一流的旅馆、餐厅及商店等处使用。
- 2) Carte Blanche全权信用卡, 这是两个法语词, 意思是blank card “空白的卡片”。原义是一个空白的文件, 由一方事先在协议上签好字, 然后送另一方填写它所同意的条件。
- 3) Diners Club大来俱乐部信用卡。
- 4) Master Card万事达信用卡, 是美国3 000家银行通过国际信用卡协会 (Interbank Card Association) 签发的信用卡。它是美国使用最广泛的信用卡中的一种, 原名为Master Charge。
- 5) Visa维萨信用卡, 是美洲银行发行的信用卡。该行是最先签发信用卡的银行。在各种信用卡中, 美洲银行所签发的信用卡数目最多。在美国加利福尼亚州以外的约40个州的银行, 都可以代表美洲银行签发它的信用卡。该行的信用卡原名为“美洲银行卡” (Bank Americard), 于1977年改名为“维萨” (Visa)。



IV. 语言点 (Language Points)

I 课文补充注释 (Notes to Dialogues and Passage A)

1. Finding Accommodation

寻找住宿的地方。

此处的accommodation指“住处，住所，房间”。

注意美式英语常用复数形式accommodations指“膳宿（供应）；接待”。

e.g. The travel agency has arranged our accommodation.

旅行社已为我们安排了住处。

The accommodations at that hotel are quite good.

那家宾馆的食宿条件很好。

2. Single or double?

单人房间还是双人房间？

single, double是a single room or a double room的简略形式。

e.g. I'd like to reserve a single, please.

我想订一个单人房间。

We need a room with a double bed for my wife and myself.

我和我的妻子需要一个有双人床的房间。

3. With a bath or with a shower?

要盆浴还是淋浴？

with a bath指带浴盆（的房间）；with a shower指带淋浴（的房间）；

full bath或者full bathroom全套洗澡设备，指既带浴盆又带淋浴的房间，而不是只有浴盆或淋浴的房间。

e.g. Generally, a room with full bath is more expensive than that with bath or shower.

通常带有全套洗澡设备的房间要比只带浴盆或淋浴的房间价格贵。

Mr. Wang chose a room with a shower while Mr. Zhang with a bath.

王先生挑了一间带淋浴的房间，而张先生却挑了一间带盆浴的房间。

4. Can I pay by credit card?

收信用卡吗？

请注意介词by和with的用法区别：用by则名词前不用冠词，且名词用单数；用with则名词有单复数之分，且前面常需用冠词：Can I pay with a credit card?

5. Could you register, please?

您登记一下好吗？

register的意思是“登记，注册”，即fill in the form“填表”。

e.g. He registered at the Grand Hotel.

他登记住宿在大酒店。

In September, new students register for the new school year.

新生在9月份新学年开始时办理注册手续。

6. Pardon?

什么？

Pardon是I beg your pardon的省略形式，原意是“我请求您的原谅。”/“请您再说一遍好吗？”Pardon在美式英语中又说Pardon me或Excuse me，常用来请求别人再重复所说的话。在这种情况下，用英式英语还可以说Sorry，通常用升调。

e.g. — The flight is leaving at 4 o'clock this afternoon.

— Pardon?

— 飞机下午4点起飞。

— 对不起，请您再说一遍。

— The class meeting has been put off till next Friday.

— Pardon me?

— 班会推迟到下星期五召开。

— 对不起，请再说一遍。

7. So you all went on a conducted tour yesterday afternoon.

那么说你们昨天下午都随旅游团去旅游了。

a conducted tour是指带导游的团体旅游

e.g. Did you go on a conducted tour to Xi'an last summer?

你去年夏天随旅游团去西安了吗？

I don't like a conducted tour so that I can see what I want to see.

我不喜欢跟团旅游，这样我想看什么就可以看什么了。

8. It's such an exciting place.

颐和园（它）真令人激动。

such修饰“形容词+单数可数名词”的结构时，冠词a放在形容词之前；so则需置于形容词之后但在名词之前。

e.g. He is such a kind-hearted man that we all like him.

他特别善良，我们都喜欢他。

It was so interesting a book that I reread it.

这本书真有趣，我又重读了一遍。

9. I bet you were dead tired when you got back to your hotel.

我猜想回到旅馆后你们一定是累极了。

dead本文是副词，属于非正式用语，常用在形容词前，意思是“极度地，绝对”。

e.g. I'm dead certain that you can pass the exam.

我敢绝对肯定你一定能考及格。

The travelers were dead tired after the long journey.
长途跋涉后，旅行的人十分疲惫。

10. I was so tired that I fell asleep as soon as my head touched the pillow.

我都快累死了，头一挨枕头就睡着了。

fall asleep的意思是“入睡，睡着”，asleep是表语形容词，常作表语。

比较go to bed（上床睡觉），go to sleep（去睡觉），fall asleep（睡着），be fast/sound asleep（熟睡）。

e.g. I didn't go to bed until twelve last night.

昨天夜里直到12点我才上床睡觉。

I didn't go to sleep until five in the morning.

我直到早晨5点才去睡觉。

He fell asleep during the meeting.

他开会的时候睡着了。

Don't bother the child. He is fast/sound asleep.

别吵孩子。他睡得很香。

11. Travelers fall into two categories: those who make lists and those who do not.

旅行的人有两种：一种做计划，另一种不做。

travelers属于美式英语拼法。英式英语的拼法是travellers。

12. Neither approach works perfectly in South America.

在南美，上述两种方法都不完美。

Neither不定代词，表示“两者都不”，作主语或定语时，谓语动词用单数。

e.g. Neither is wrong.

两个都不错。

Neither film is interesting.

两部电影都没有意思。

13. ... internal flights often run only once or twice a week, and an advance booking can mean the difference between continuing to a new city and waiting several days for another flight.

国内航班常常是一周一次或两次，是否提前订票大有差异，订了就可以继续旅行到一新地，否则有时要等几天才能有下一个航班。

internal flights表示“国内航班”。

internal *a.* 内部的，国内的；体内的

e.g. The internal trade in that country goes up steadily.

该国的国内贸易稳步增长。

She's been having some internal problems.

她一直有些内科疾病。

Antonym: **external** *a.* 外部的，外面的，外国的

e.g. The medicine is for external use only.

此药供外用，不可内服。

14. On the other hand, planners will have to leave some matters to be done without having planned them in advance.

另一方面，有些事情则很难提前计划。

1) On (the) one hand, on the other hand 一方面，另一方面

e.g. I know this job of mine isn't well paid, but on the other hand, I don't have to work long hours.

我知道这份工作报酬不高，但从另一方面来说，我也不必工作太长时间。

2) ... some matters to be done ... to be done 作 matters 的定语，故用被动语态。

3) without having planned in advance 不必事先计划，动名词短语 having planned 是完成时态，作介词 without 的宾语，整个介词短语作 do 的状语。

e.g. He left without saying good-bye.

他不辞而别。

The girl ran and ran without knowing where to go.

这个女孩跑呀跑，不知道该去哪儿。

15. And whether you consider yourself a planner or a free spirit, you still have to decide certain basics at the very start: where to go, what to do, and how much to spend.

无论你认为自己是赞成做计划旅行还是喜欢顺其自然，有些最基本的事情，如去哪儿，去做什么，要花多少钱等等，你都得提前决定。

whether ... or ... “是…还是…”；“不管…还是…”

e.g. It is uncertain whether he will succeed or fail.

他会成功还是失败，还不能肯定。

Whether he drives or takes a taxi, he'll be here on time.

不管他开车来还是坐出租车来，他总会准时到达的。

where to go, what to do 等是有疑问词引导的动词不定式短语作 basics 的同位语。

词汇用法 (Word Usage)

aim *n.* 1) act of aiming (with a gun, etc.) 瞄准

2) purpose, object 目标，目的

v. direct a weapon towards some object 瞄准；目的在于

e.g. Take careful aim at the target.

仔细瞄准靶。

He missed his aim.

他没打中目标。

What's your aim in life?

你的人生目标是什么？

He has only one aim in his life — to become a successful doctor before fifty.

他只有一个人生目标——在50岁之前成为一名出色的医生。

amount *n.* the total of two or more quantities; a number; a sum, quantity 合计，总额；数

字; 量

v. to add up in number or quantity; to be equivalent 总共; 等于, 如同

e.g. That project will cost large amounts of money.

那项工程需要花费大量的金钱。

Their traveling expenses amount to three thousand yuan.

他们的旅费共达3 000元。

Do you think my plan will never amount to anything?

你认为我的计划无关紧要吗?

In fact, her words amount to a refusal.

实际上, 她说的那些话等于是拒绝。

approach *v.* come nearer to 走近, 接近

n. 1) an act of approaching 接近

2) way, path, road, method 方法, 才能, 手段

e.g. The plane approached the runway.

飞机接近跑道。

As winter approached the weather became colder.

随着冬天临近, 天气变得冷些了。

Our approach drove away the animals.

我们一走近, 野兽全都跑开了。

Heavy footsteps mean someone's approach.

沉重的脚步声说明有人来了。

This book provides a good approach to computers.

这是一本电脑入门书。

They are using a new approach to language teaching.

他们正在使用一种语言教学的新方法。

area *n.* 1) a roughly bounded part of the space on a surface, a region 地区

2) division of experience, activity, or knowledge; a field 范畴, 经验范围; 领域

e.g. We are going to build a park in this area.

我们准备在这个区域内建一个公园。

The sitting room has an area of 100 square meters.

客厅的面积有100平方米。

He is well-known in this area.

他是这个领域的知名人物。

arrange *v.* to put into a specific order or relation; to plan or prepare for 计划, 做准备; 安排, 布置

e.g. How do you plan to arrange for the big party?

你们打算怎样准备这次盛大的晚会?

In a dictionary the words are arranged in alphabetical order.

词典里的词是按字母顺序编排的。

She arranges all the books in a neat row.

她把书放成整齐的一排。

bear *v.* (used with *can/could* in negative sentences and questions 在否定句或疑问句中与 *can/could* 连用) to be able to accept and deal with sth unpleasant 承受; 忍受

e.g. The pain was almost more than he could bear.

这样的痛苦几乎使他受不了。

I can't bear being kept waiting.

我无法忍受人家叫我长时间地等候。

For a long time, I couldn't bear living alone.

很长时间, 我不能忍受独居生活。

The mountaineers had to bear the intense cold.

登山队员得忍受严寒。

比较: put up with 忍受, 口语用语, 与 tolerate 意义较近, 往往有“宽容”, “不计较”, “将就”等含义。stand 忍受, 比 bear 更口语化, 常以否定形式出现, 在肯定句中具有比 bear 更强的意味, 即“经得起”。suffer 忍受, 患...病, 指非自愿地忍受各种痛苦或困难等。tolerate 容忍, 语气较弱, 指所容忍的现象以及人或事物一般不会给主语直接带来强烈苦难。

e.g. I'm afraid we'll have to put up with the loss.

恐怕我们只好接受这个损失。

They could not stand the cold in winter.

他们忍受不了冬天的严寒。

He suffered terrible pain from his injuries.

他忍受着伤口的剧痛。

The teacher won't tolerate any disorder.

老师不会容忍任何混乱。

bet *v.* 1) (on) to risk (money) on the result of a future event 下赌注; 与...打赌
2) be certain about sth 敢断定

e.g. She bet \$5 on that horse.

她在那匹马上下了 5 美元的赌注。

Do you ever bet?

你打过赌吗?

I bet he won't come.

我敢断定他不会来。

I bet that it will rain tomorrow.

我敢肯定明天一定会下雨。

category *n.* division or class in a complete system or grouping 种类, 类别, 范畴

e.g. There are many categories of books in that library.

那个图书馆里有许多种藏书。

Students can fall into several categories: part-time, full-time, degree, and non-degree.

学生可分为几类：业余的，全日制的，拿学位的和拿不拿学位的。

conduct *v.* lead or guide 领导；指导，引导

e.g. Do you prefer conducted tour or independent travel?

你喜欢有团体旅游还是独自旅游？

The guide conducted us around the museum.

导游引领我们参观了博物馆。

conductor *n.*

1) a person who directs the playing of music 乐队指挥

e.g. Who is the conductor of the band?

谁是乐队指挥？

The conductor of an orchestra stands in front of it.

指挥站在乐队前面。

2) a person employed to collect payments from passengers on a public vehicle (公共汽车、电车等) 售票员

e.g. The conductor helped the old woman to get off the bus.

售票员搀扶着老太太下了公共汽车。

She works as a conductor on a bus.

她是公共汽车售票员。

considerable *a.* deserving to be considered; rather large or great 值得考虑的；相当大（多）的，很多的

e.g. It is an area that requires considerable preparation.

在这个地区旅行，要求相当细致的计划和准备。

They bought the Crown at considerable expense.

买那辆皇冠牌汽车，他们花了不少钱。

considerably *ad.* much, a great deal 相当地，十分地

e.g. It is considerably colder this morning.

今天早晨冷得多。

This plan is considerably better.

这次计划好得多。

establish *v.*

1) to set up; begin; create 建立，创立，使开业

e.g. This university was established in 1900.

这所大学建于1900年。

This company has established a new system for dealing with complaints.

这家公司为应付投诉制定了一整套新方法。

2) to cause to be accepted or recognized 确定，使被接受

e.g. His novel established his fame as a writer.

他的小说确定了他的作家名声。

He established himself as the best general manager in that big company.
他在那家大公司中确立了自己是最出色的总经理的地位。

detail *n.* an individual part or item; a particular 细目; 细节

e.g. Could she explain her proposal in detail?

她是否能够详细解释她的方案?

Please remind him that not a single detail is to be omitted in this case.

请提醒他案件中任何细节都不得遗漏。

I'm bored. There is too much detail in his speech.

我真听够了。他的讲话太琐碎了。

general *a.*

1) of, affecting, all or nearly all; not special, local or particular 普遍的, 全面的; 一般的

e.g. The rain has been general.

普遍降雨。

Once quite rare, computers are now in general use in that region.

以前非常罕见的电脑现在已在那个地区普遍使用。

2) (after an official title) chief, head (用在头衔后) 首席的, ...长

e.g. Mr. Brown is our general manager.

布朗先生是我们总经理。

Who is the Secretary-General?

秘书长是谁?

generally *ad.* usually, widely 通常地, 普遍地

e.g. I generally get up at six o'clock.

我通常6点起床。

The new plan is generally welcome.

新计划受到普遍地欢迎。

impressive *a.* causing admiration because of size, conduct, manner, etc. 给人深刻印象的, 感人的

e.g. Tian'anmen Square is very impressive.

天安门广场令人叹为观止。

The Great Wall was so impressive that I could hardly bear to leave.

长城真是太棒了, 我都不想走了。

internal *a.* of, relating to, or located within; inner; domestic 内部的; 固有的; 国内的

e.g. The painting reflects her internal peace.

这幅画反映了她内心的平静。

We've got to understand the internal relations of all these things.

我们必须了解所有这些事物的内部联系。

Have you noticed the internal contradictions of the theory?

你注意到这个理论自身的内在矛盾了吗？

perfectly *ad.* quite; quite well; completely 十分地；美好地；完全地

e.g. They were perfectly happy.

他们十分快乐。

The American girl speaks Chinese perfectly.

那位美国女孩汉语讲得棒极了。

plan *n.* a program, or method worked out beforehand 计划，方针

v. to have as a specific aim or purpose; intend 计划；打算

e.g. We are going to make a new plan for power conservation.

我们准备制定新的节电方案。

The university plans to build a computer center.

学校计划建一个计算机中心。

They plan to buy a car this year.

他们今年打算买一辆车。

related *a.* (to sb/sth)

1) connected in some way 相关的，相联系的

e.g. These two ideas are never related.

这两种观点毫无联系。

Employment is related to education background.

就业与学历有关系。

2) connected by a family relationship 与…有亲戚关系的

e.g. He is related to her by marriage.

他与她是姻亲。

Marry and John are related.

玛丽与约翰是亲戚。

Antonym: **unrelated** *a.* 与…无关的

e.g. You'd better not discuss the problems unrelated.

无关的问题最好不要讨论。

I'm sure that my roommate was unrelated to the matter.

我相信我的室友与该事无关。

require *v.*

1) need; depend on for success, fulfillment, etc. 需要

e.g. Thank you. We don't require extra help.

谢谢。我们不需要额外的帮助。

These machines require looking after.

这些机器需要有人看管。

2) order, demand; insist 命令，要求；坚持

e.g. All passengers are required to show their tickets.

所有乘客都需要交验车票。

You are required to answer all the questions.

你必须回答所有问题。

spirit *n.*

1) soul, a person's mind or feelings as distinct from his body 精神, 心灵

e.g. Although the hero died, his spirit will never die.

英雄虽死, 精神永存。

The boy's spirit was troubled for telling a lie to his teacher.

由于向老师撒谎, 男孩的心中十分苦恼。

2) spirits (*pl.*) a person's feelings or state of mind (复数) 精神状态; 情绪; 心境

e.g. They were in high spirits when they heard the good news.

听到好消息时, 他们兴高采烈。

What happened? You are in low spirits.

怎么啦? 你情绪很低落。

3) spirits (*usu. pl.* 通常作复数) strong distilled alcoholic drink 烈酒, 白酒

e.g. Can you drink spirits?

你能喝白酒吗?

Whisky, brandy and Maotai are all spirits.

威士忌、白兰地和茅台酒都是烈性酒。

specific *a.* detailed and exact; clear in meaning or explanation 准确的, 确切的; 精细的, 详尽的

e.g. Will you please tell us something about Beijing Opera in a bit more specific way?

您能不能更详细地介绍一下京剧的情况?

The boss never gives specific instructions to his employees.

这位老板从来都不对雇员作具体的指示。

specifically *ad.*

1) of the stated kind and no other; particularly 特有地, 特定地; 具体地

e.g. This book was written specifically for old people.

这本书是专为老年人写的。

He told me specifically to attend their tea party.

他特地告诉我参加他们的茶话会。

2) exactly and clearly 明确地

e.g. Mother has specifically told you not to play with fire, so why did you do that again?

妈妈明确地告诉你别玩火, 可你怎么又玩上了?

The doctor told the patient specifically not to take this kind of medicine more than twice a day.

医生明确地告诉病人这种药一天最多只能吃两次。

square *n.* a figure having four equal sides; sth having an equal-sided rectangular form; an open area in a town, usually with four sides, surrounded by buildings 方形物; 边长相等的四边形; 广场

a. having four equal sides and four right angles; expressed in units measuring area 正
方形的；平面积的

e.g. This is a square scarf.

这是一个方围巾。

There was a big square with flowers and grass in it in the center of the university.

在校园的中心有一个种满花草的广场。

Nine is the square of three.

9是3的平方。

twice *ad.* in two cases or on two occasions; two times in degree or amount 在两种情况下；两
次；两倍

e.g. I rewrote the essay more than twice.

我把文章修改了不止两次。

He has answered that question twice.

那个问题他已经回答过两次了。

Twice three is six.

二三得六。

He has twice the wisdom he had.

他比从前加倍睿智了。

fill in to put in whatever is needed to complete something 填上，把…补齐

e.g. Would you please fill in the application form?

请您填一下申请表好吗？

Fill in your name here, please.

请在这填一下您的姓名。

have a good stay have a good time when living here 过得愉快

e.g. Your room number is 301. Have a good stay.

您的房间号是301。祝您过得愉快。

I wish you would have a good stay.

祝您过得愉快。

on holiday/on one's holiday having a holiday 在休假

e.g. I'm sorry, Mr. Smith is on holiday this week.

对不起，史密斯先生本周休假。

They will be on holiday in May.

他们5月份将休假。

fall into sth. be able to be divided into sth 可分为

e.g. Unit 1 falls into four parts.

第一单元可分为4个部分。

Class 2 falls into six groups.

二班可分为6个小组。

in advance ahead in time; beforehand 预先, 提前

e.g. You'd better book your ticket in advance.

你最好提前订机票。

If you plan to visit the Forbidden City tomorrow, please inform us in advance.

你如果明天准备去参观紫禁城, 最好能事先通知我们。

at the very start at the place where something begins 在一开始

e.g. You will have to decide certain basics at the very start.

有些最基本的事情你都得一开始就决定。

I'm afraid you need to sign a contract with us at the very start.

恐怕一开始你就要与我们签合同。



V. 练习指导及补充练习 (Guide to Exercises and Supplementary Exercises)

1. Check your understanding 的目的是检验学生对有关对话及短文的理解, 教师应注意引导学生用自己的语言回答, 并围绕这些练习就对话与课文的内容与词汇、句型等用法进行口头训练, 不要把它们只作为理解练习使用。

补充练习如下:

For Dialogue A

Answer the following questions briefly according to Dialogue A.

- 1) Who is traveling in China? (Andrew Blatchford.)
- 2) Where does the conversation take place? (In a hotel.)
- 3) Whom is Mr. Blatchford talking to? (A receptionist.)
- 4) Does he need a single room with a bath or with a shower? (With a bath.)
- 5) How long will he stay there? (For two nights.)
- 6) How much does the room cost a night? (\$30 a night.)
- 7) Does he pay by credit card or in cash? (By credit card.)
- 8) Does he need to check in? (Yes, he does.)

For Dialogue B

Choose the best answer according to Dialogue B.

- 1) The title of Dialogue B is _____.
 - A. A Conducted Tour.
 - B. A Tour of China.

- C. An Interesting Conversation.
D. A Tour Guide.
- 2) Some young Americans are talking to _____.
- A. an American friend
B. a Japanese friend
C. a Chinese friend
D. an Australian friend
- 3) What did they do yesterday afternoon? _____
- A. They went to the movies.
B. They went to a concert.
C. They went to see Beijing Opera.
D. They went on a conducted tour.
- 4) They went to see some places in Beijing. The right order is _____
- A. The Tian' anmen Square, the Forbidden City, the Summer Palace, the theatre.
B. The Tian' anmen Square, the Summer Palace, the Forbidden City, the theatre.
C. The Forbidden City, the theatre, the Tian' anmen Square, the Summer Palace.
D. The Tian' anmen Square, the Forbidden City the theater, the Summer Palace.
- 5) How did Fritz describe the Tian'anmen Square?
- A. It was wonderful.
B. It was very impressive.
C. It was fascinating.
D. It was very exciting.
- 6) According to the dialogue, who enjoyed the tour? _____
- A. Fritz only. B. Leo only.
C. Boris and Bill only. D. All of them.

答案:

- 1) A 2) C 3) D 4) A 5) B 6) D

For Passage A

Answer the following questions briefly according to Passage A.

- 1) How many categories can travelers fall into? (Travelers can fall into two categories: those who make lists and those who do not.)
- 2) For others, the joy of a trip is its spontaneity. What does the word "spontaneity" mean? (It means happening naturally.)
- 3) Do both approaches work perfectly in South America?
(No, neither of them works perfectly there.)
- 4) "And an advance booking can mean the difference between continuing to a new city and waiting several days for another flight."
Why does the author say that?
(Because the internal flights there are not very convenient so you have to book a ticket in advance.)

- 5) What does the author suggest to a planner or a free spirit?
(The author suggests that they should have to decide certain basics at the very start: where to go, what to do, and how much to spend.)
- 6) Is planning necessary? (Yes, it is. Before planning specific travel-related details, you might need to establish your general travel aims.)

2. Learn to communicate 的目的是对本课重点句型的总结归纳, 此外口语中常见的句子还有:

Finding accommodation

- 1) Good morning/afternoon/evening, sir/madam. Welcome to our hotel.
Good morning/afternoon/evening. Could you let me have a single/double room, please?
How long will you be staying here, please?
Two nights. I'd like to have a quiet room if possible.
Let me see. Yes, you can have Room 301. It's in the back.
All right. I'll take it.
- 2) We'd like a double room for three nights.
I hope it's a quiet room, not facing the road.
- 3) What's the price for a single/double room?
\$50 a night, including breakfast.
- 4) Can I go and have a look first?
Sure, this way please. The lift/elevator is right over there.
Here we are.
It looks nice. I'll take it. Thank you very much.
You are welcome./My pleasure.
- 5) Could/Can you register, please?/Can/Could you fill in the form, please?
Yes, of course.
OK. Here you are.
Thank you. The boy will show you to your room.
Boy, will you take Mr. Zhang to Room 301, please?

Talking about tours

- 1) So you all went to the Great Wall yesterday. How did you enjoy it?
It was wonderful/impressive.
How did you find it?
It was so impressive that I could hardly bear to leave.
- 2) Did you go on a conducted tour last week?
How did you go?
We went by coach.
How did you like it?
It was wonderful.

3. Build up your language stock 的目的是对本课出现的词语进行巩固。练习9(句型套用)是为学生学习掌握本课重要句型专门补充编写的。这种句型套用练习可引导学生深入理解句子结构及其精妙之处,并在此基础上模拟套用这些句型,效果十分显著。因此教师要作为重点练习在课上引导学生完成这一练习,还可要求他们在练习的基础上背诵这些句型。

词汇补充练习:

(汉译英:)

- 1) 我敢肯定他们不在茶馆。(bet)
- 2) 你喜欢团体旅游还是独自旅行?(a conducted tour)
- 3) 听说要去长城,他们兴高采烈。(in high spirits)
- 4) 这项计划需要认真考虑。(require)
- 5) 作为接待员,要根据具体情况回答。(specific)
- 6) 国内贸易正在稳步增长。(internal)
- 7) 因为妈妈有病,那个男孩子舍不得离开母亲去国外读书。(bear)
- 8) 你们图书馆有多少种藏书?(category)
- 9) 北京大学是何时建校的?(establish)
- 10) 请填一下表格。(fill in)

(汉译英答案:)

- 1) I bet they can't be at the teahouse.
- 2) Do you like to go on a conducted tour or travel by yourself?
- 3) They were in high spirits when they heard they were going to the Great Wall.
- 4) This plan requires careful consideration.
- 5) As a receptionist, you should respond according to the specific circumstances.
- 6) The internal trade goes up steadily.
- 7) That boy could not bear to leave his mother to further his study abroad, because his mother was ill.
- 8) How many categories of books are there in your library?
- 9) When was Beijing University established?
- 10) Please fill in the form.

4. Extra reading 的目的是锻炼学生的独立阅读能力。教师宜在课上限时完成,可提出简短的问题让学生口头回答,书中的理解性练习可留给学生自己课后完成。

5. Passage B 为主课文A的补充短文,分别设有阅读理解和句型翻译套写两项练习,其中的重

要词汇注释如下:

Passage B的重要词汇注释如下

current *n.* 涌流

a. 当前的; 流通的

e.g. Do you have any news about the current negotiation?

你有关于正在进行的谈判的消息吗?

electric current 电流 water current 水流 current money 通用的货币

direction *n.* 方向

e.g. She has noticed a new direction in language teaching.

她已经注意到了语言教学的一个新方向。

drown *v.* 淹死

e.g. Don't play by the river in case you fall in and drown!

不要在河边玩耍, 以免掉到河里淹死!

He drowned himself in work.

他埋头工作。

panic *n.* 恐慌

e.g. When the supermarket caught fire, there was a panic.

超市失火时, 引起了一阵恐慌。

parallel *a.* 平行的

e.g. These trees are in two parallel rows.

这些树排成平行的两排。

This writer is good at using parallel sentences.

这位作者特别善于使用排比句。

pity *n.* 遗憾

e.g. It's a pity that you can't attend the reception.

你不能参加招待会真是遗憾。

pull *n.* 拉; 拽

e.g. They are trying hard to pull a sled up the hill.

他们正设法把雪橇拖上山。

riptide *n.* 激流

e.g. It's dangerous to surf in the riptide.

在激流中冲浪是危险的。

shore *n.* 海岸

e.g. We had a long walk along the shore.

我们沿着海岸做了一次长长的散步。

stroke *n.* 划动; 笔画

e.g. With one stroke of his ax, he had cut the tree down.

他一斧子下去就砍倒了这棵树。

tide *n.* 潮水

v. 将…冲走

e.g. Time and tide wait for no man.

岁月不等人。

The sea tided the boat ashore.

潮水把小船冲上海滩。

tire *v.* 使劳累

e.g. Writing tires me.

写作使我感到劳累。

tragedy *n.* 悲剧

e.g. Their holiday ended in tragedy when the plane crashed.

飞机坠毁，他们的假日以不幸而告终。

underwater *a.* 在水中的；水下的

e.g. To save the swimmer, we need an underwater boat.

要救这位游水者，我们需要一只潜水艇。

victim *n.* 受害人

e.g. He was the victim of a road accident.

他是一场交通事故的受害者。

6. 本课的Applied Writing 目的是进一步熟悉和了解旅游日程安排的基本写作格式。

7. 本课的Pick Up Your Grammar 为复习被动语态的过去式和完成式。教师还可根据学生的实际水平补充少量短句进行口头语法练习。



VI. 练习答案 (Key to Exercises)

Key to Integrated Skills Development

- ① 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. F 6. T 7. T
- ② 1. One of their Chinese friends called Fu Jie.
2. In a tea house.
3. They went on a conducted tour.
4. Yes, it was a wonderful tour.

5. The Tian'anmen Square.
6. Yes, he did. He said that the Tian'anmen Square was so impressive that he could hardly bear to leave.
7. They went to the Forbidden City.
8. It was fascinating.
9. It was such an exciting place.
10. They went to see Beijing Opera.

3 Those who prefer to plan the trip.

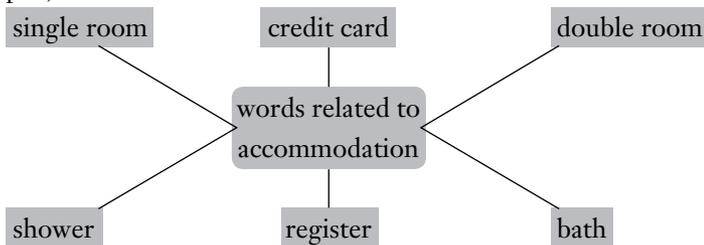
make lists
 plan the course of their trip
 to the finest detail
 considerable preparation
 advance booking
 a planner
 require planning

Those who enjoy the spontaneity of a trip.

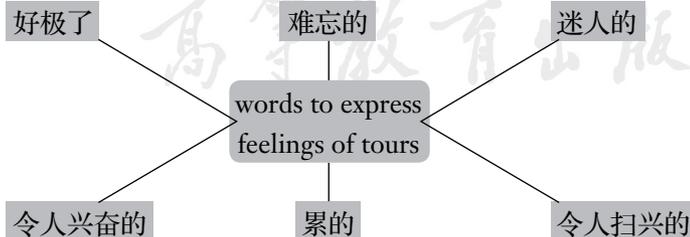
do not make lists
 the joy of a trip is its spontaneity
 a free spirit

5 (Open)

- 6 1. single room credit card double room



2. 好极了 难忘的 迷人的



- 7 1. bet 我敢断定他不会来。
 2. details 我们在讨论计划的细目。
 3. tour 大家都希望环球旅行。
 4. spirit 精神与肉体可分吗?
 5. require 如果你还需要其他的信息, 请给我们打电话。
 6. specific 这个决定是根据具体情况制定的。
 7. Internal 国内贸易也很重要。
 8. bear 他不愿意谈起此事, 甚至对我也不愿谈。

- 8 1. He will fall asleep as soon as his head touches the pillow.
 2. First, tourists should establish their general travel aims.
 3. Neither approach works perfectly when traveling in China.

4. These decisions require a certain amount of planning.
5. Traveling abroad requires considerable preparation.
9.
 1. a. 学生们分为两大类：住在校内的和不住在校内的。
 - b. Materials fall into two large categories: those that are natural and those that are not.
 - c. Teas fall into two large categories: those that are green and those that are black.
 2. a. 因此，在计划未来的事业之前，你可能需要了解自己的兴趣所在。
 - b. So before getting married, you might want to meet each other's parents.
 - c. So before buying the product, you might want to compare it with other brands.
10.
 1. b 2. a
11.
 1. No, not necessarily a good way. The beach may be a dangerous place if you are not careful enough, or if you do not have enough knowledge.
 2. Every summer, a few people drown at the beach. Some of them are good swimmers.
 3. It is a strong underwater current. It can move you quickly away from shore and out to the sea.
 4. You shouldn't swim too far out from the beach.
 5. First of all, you should not panic. You shouldn't try against the tide and swim back to shore. Instead, you should swim parallel to the beach.
12.
 1. a. 然而，如果我们没有足够的信息，整个工程会是一场噩梦。
 - b. However, if we do not learn enough skills, skiing may prove to be a boring game.
 - c. However, if we do not have enough courage, the plan may prove to be a complete failure.
 2. a. 所以我们要养成习惯，不要向外国人询问年龄、婚姻等私人问题。
 - b. Therefore, children should make it a rule never to go to unknown places alone.
 - c. Therefore, young people should make it a rule not to depend on parents for everything.
 3. a. 如果你还是迟疑，就不要匆忙做出决定。
 - b. If you find yourself alone in a desert, don't lose hope.
 - c. If you find yourself lost in the street, don't hesitate to ask for help.
 4. a. 向后动一下，你就会脱离陷阱了。
 - b. So just a few steps forward and you will be safe.
 - c. So just a walk for a while and you will feel much better.

Key to Pick Up Your Grammar

1. This car was repaired last week with Mr. Green's help.
2. In the past, English was not taught in primary schools in this country.
3. The children have been safely brought to the museum.
4. Which classroom has not been cleaned yet?
5. This word was not spelled correctly in the dictation yesterday.
6. The same mistake has been made by you several times.
7. This computer was bought yesterday.
8. How was the correct answer worked out?



VII. 课文参考译文 (Text Translation for Reference)

对话 A: 寻找住宿的地方

安德鲁·布莱奇福特在中国旅游。现在他来到一家旅馆。

- 接待员: 你好, 先生。要住宿吗?
 安德鲁: 是的。请给我开个房间。
 接待员: 单人房间还是双人房间?
 安德鲁: 单人房间。
 接待员: 住一个晚上?
 安德鲁: 不, 住两个晚上。
 接待员: 要盆浴还是淋浴?
 安德鲁: 盆浴。请问多少钱?
 接待员: 一个晚上30美元。
 安德鲁: 收信用卡吗?
 接待员: 当然收。您登记一下好吗?
 安德鲁: 什么?
 接待员: 请您填一下表格好吗?
 安德鲁: 好的。
 接待员: 您住403房间。祝您休息好。
 安德鲁: 谢谢。

对话 B: 随旅游团旅行

一批美国年轻人在中国度假。他们现在正在一家茶馆和他们的中国朋友付杰聊天。

- 付 杰: 那么说你们昨天下午随旅游团去旅游了。玩得怎么样?
 弗里兹: 棒极了。
 付 杰: 你们先去了哪里?
 弗里兹: 我们首先去了天安门广场。
 付 杰: 你们觉得怎么样?
 弗里兹: 非常有气魄。我都不想离开了。
 付 杰: 之后呢?
 利 奥: 之后我们去了紫禁……
 付 杰: 紫禁城。
 利 奥: 对, 是紫禁城。真迷人。
 包利斯: 离开紫禁城以后我们去了颐和园。颐和园真令人激动。
 付 杰: 晚上是怎么过的?

- 比 尔： 晚上我们去看了京剧。
付 杰： 我猜想回到旅馆后你们一定是累极了。
比 尔： 我都快累死了，头一挨枕头就睡着了。

短文 A: 计划旅游

旅行的人有两种。一种做计划。另一种不做。一些人喜欢详详细细地计划自己的旅行行程，另一些人则喜欢顺其自然。

在南美，上述两种方法都不完美。在南美旅行，需要一定的计划准备。国内航班常常是一周一次或两次。是否提前订票大有差异，订了就可以继续旅行到一新地，否则有时要等几天才能有下一个航班。另一方面，有些事情则很难提前计划。一些最激动人心的旅行是要等你到了邻近城市之后才能决定的。无论你认为自己是赞成做计划旅行还是喜欢顺其自然，有些最基本的事情，如去哪儿，去做什么，要花多少钱等等，你都得提前决定。这些决定需要一定的计划。因此在计划与旅游有关的细节之前，你可能要有一个总的旅游目标。

短文 B: 来自海滩的危险

海滩是度假的好去处，然而，如果我们不小心，如果我们没有足够的知识，海滩也会是一个很危险的地方。

每年夏天都有一些人在海边溺水而亡，这真是一件很遗憾的事。有时候淹死的是很会游泳的人。造成悲剧发生的原因之一是涌流在作祟。

涌流是海面下一种强大的暗流。从海岸迅速地流向大海。它出现的时候毫无预警，会将受害者拉下水面并拖离岸边。因此，人们应该养成习惯，游泳不要离海滩太远。

假如你发现自己被卷入涌流时，别惊慌，而且千万别试图逆着涌流往岸上游，那会使你精疲力竭，也许就会淹死。相反，你应该沿着与海滩平行的方向游。涌流的范围很窄，所以只要朝正确方向游几下，你就能脱离险境了。

Unit

6

Traveling in China (II)



I. 教学时间分配 (Time Allocation)

本单元共需4~5学时，对话1学时；课文A及练习2~3学时，课文B、语法等1学时（教师可根据本课内容的难易程度稍作增减）。Extra reading的目的为锻炼学生的独立阅读能力。教师宜在课上限时完成，可提出简短的问题让学生口头回答，书中的理解性练习可留给学生自己课后完成。



II. 教学目的与要求 (Aims and Requirements)

I 内容重点 (Language Focus)

1. 交际重点 (Communicative Focus)

旅游胜地及旅行社介绍。

2. 重点训练单词和词组 (Focal Words and Expressions)

amazing, assist, cancellation, circumstance, due (to), energetic, extra, formation, guidance, impossible, individual, rare, responsibility, satisfy, success, suit, unfortunately, do one's best, make

sure, look through, worry about, beyond control

3. 重点句型和习惯表达法 (Focal Functions and Patterns)

1) The travel agency has been planning holidays to suit individual needs.

We do not offer to do the impossible, we just want you to enjoy yourselves.

We have arranged a number of tours for people.

We aim to please.

2) If you haven't decided on your holiday, why not look through this brochure?

When you have made your choice, telephone us and we shall be happy to assist you in every way we can, but we do recommend that you book early.

There is no need to worry about ...

If you wish to change your booking at a later date, all you have to do is to send an email to ...

3) We will do our best to satisfy you, but unfortunately, we have to make a small extra charge.

We reserve the right to make changes if necessary.

II 技能要求 (Skills Development)

1 听说 (Listening and Speaking)

能听懂并用英语进行简单的有关旅游与度假安排的对话，培养从事涉外导游工作的初步能力。

2 读译 (Reading and Translating)

能读懂和翻译有关旅游与度假食宿安排、旅行方式、团体旅游、旅游景点和旅行社的小短文。

3 写 (Applied Writing)

A. 能使用所学词汇、句型和语法将有关旅游与度假安排的简短汉语句子译成英语。

B. 能够套写英文旅游日程安排及简单的旅游广告。



III. 背景资料 (Background Information)

长城 (The Great Wall)

The Great Wall, which is said to be visible from the moon, is located in the northwest and north of Beijing.

The construction of the Great Wall started in the 7th century BC. The different states

under the Zhou Dynasty in the northern parts of the country each built their own walls for defence purposes. Having unified China in 221 B.C., the State of Qin joined all the walls to hold off the invaders from the Xiongnu tribes in the north and extended them to more than 10 000 li or 5 000 kilometers. This is the origin of the name of the “10 000-li Great Wall”.

The Great Wall was renovated from time to time after the Qin Dynasty. A major renovation started with the founding of the Ming Dynasty in 1368, and took 200 years to complete. The wall we see today is almost exactly the result of this effort. With a total length of over 6 000 kilometers, it extends to the Jiayu Pass in Gansu Province in the west and to the mouth of the Yalu River in Liaoning Province in the east. What lies north of Beijing is but a small section of it.



IV. 语言点 (Language Points)

I 课文补充注释 (Notes to Dialogues and Passage A)

1. A visit to Dalian

到大连旅游

A visit to some place指“到某地参观、访问、旅游”，visit是名词，后接介词to。注意这里to不是动词不定式的符号，其后不能接动词原形。

e.g. Is it your first visit to China?

这是您第一次来中国吗?

A visit to Xinghai Park will be more interesting.

去星海公园游览一定会更加有趣。

归纳: pay attention to + *n./doing* 注意, 留心

look forward to + *n./doing* 盼望

pay a visit to a friend/a doctor 访友, 去看病

e.g. Please pay more attention to your spelling.

请多注意拼写。

We are looking forward to hearing from you soon.

盼回音。

Tom didn't feel well yesterday, so he paid a visit to a doctor.

汤姆昨天感到不舒服, 所以他去看医生了。

2. Yes, I've lived here in Dalian all my life.

是的，我在大连住了一辈子。

all one's life 一生，也可以说 the whole life。

e.g. He has been a doctor all his life/the whole life.

他当了一辈子医生。

Professor Wang has never been abroad all his life.

王教授一生从未出过国。

3. I am on my way to Qingdao on business.

我在去青岛出差途中。

on one's way to ... 去...途中

e.g. On her way to school, Mary picked up a handbag on the roadside.

在上学的路上，玛丽拾到一个手提包。

I saw a car accident on my way home.

回家途中，我看到一起车祸。

on business 因公出差

e.g. Sorry, Mr. White is away on business. He is not in at the moment.

对不起，怀特先生因公出差，现在不在。

Next week they'll fly to London on business.

下星期他们将乘飞机到伦敦出差。

4. What can I see here in twenty-four hours?

24小时我能看点什么呢？

in twenty-four hours 指在24小时之内，文中的in相当于介词within。in常置于表示时间的名词前，表示将来时间。

e.g. How can I finish the job in five hours only by myself?

我怎么可能在5小时之内独立完工呢？

Chris Hudson says that he will come back in two weeks.

克里斯·哈德森说他两周后回来。

5. Well, the Golden Stone Beach is a beautiful scenic spot in the north of Dalian, where the amazing reef and rare earth formations are said to be the devils' and gods' work.

金石滩是大连北部的一处风景区。据说那里奇异的礁石和罕见的地貌巧夺天工。

... are said to be the devils' and gods' work 是被动语态。其主动语态形式为：

They say that the amazing reef and rare earth formations are the devils' and gods' work.

带有宾语从句的句子转换成被动语态时，需要将宾语从句变成主语从句。通常，用形式主语it来代替，而将主语从句后置。

e.g. They said that the conference was very successful.

人们说会议十分成功。

It was said that the conference was very successful.

含有“宣称(say)”和“相信(believe)”等动词的主动句通常有两种被动语态结构：宾语从

句作主语和复合结构中的宾语作主语。

常见的动词有：

assume (假定)	believe (相信)	consider (认为)	feel (觉得)
find (发现)	report (报导)	say (说)	think (认为)

e.g. They considered the mistake to be very serious.

It was considered that the mistake was very serious.

The mistake was considered to be very serious.

人们认为错误十分严重。

People believe that he is honest.

It is believed that he is honest.

He is believed to be honest.

人们认为他很诚实。

6. Here we are.

我们到了。

在here, there, now, then等引起的句子中，主语是名词，动词是be, come, go等时常用倒装句，以引起注意。但是如果主语是人称代词时，则不用倒装。

e.g. Here is the letter for you.

这是给你的信。

There comes the school bus.

校车来了。

Here you are.

给你。

There he comes.

他来了。

7. What a lovely place!

这地方真漂亮。

how和what两者都用于感叹句。how修饰形容词和副词；what则修饰名词或名词短语。

e.g. How beautiful the park is!

多美的公园啊！

What a kind girl she is!

她真是一个善良的女孩！

8. How far is it from here to the beach?

这儿离海滨多远？

How +形容词/副词，表示程度，多少，多么

How old/long/often/much 多大岁数/多长/多少次/多少

e.g. How old are you?

你多大岁数了？

How long did you wait?

你等了多长时间了？

How often do you write home?

你多久写一封家信？

How much money do you have on you?

你带了多少钱？

9. Only about a ten-minute walk.

走路10分钟就到了。

句中省略了It is。本句也可以写成：

It is only about ten minutes' walk.

在英语中，名词所有格有两种形式：名词+'s；名词+ of。一般情况下，前者多用于有生命的事物的名词，后者多用于无生命事物的名词。

e.g. my brother's girl friend 我哥哥的女朋友

Tom's book 汤姆的书

the contents of the book 这本书的目录

the name of the film 这部电影的名字

但在表示时间、距离等无生命的东 西的名词所有格时，也可以用第一种表示法。

e.g. yesterday's meeting 昨天的会议 ten minutes' break 10分钟的休息

类似的用法还有：

an hour's ride 乘车1小时的路程

five minutes' walk 步行5分钟的路程

ten hours' drive 开车10小时的路程

10. About 28°C.

大约28°C。

28°C读作twenty-eight degrees Centigrade/Celsius

西方传统上用华氏温度(°F degrees Fahrenheit)测量温度，虽然现在官方也使用摄氏温度(°C)，但是老百姓仍然喜欢使用华氏温度。我国采用的是摄氏温度。

摄氏温度(°C)与华氏温度(°F)的换算关系是：

$$C = \frac{5}{9}(F - 32) \quad F = \frac{9}{5}C + 32$$

0°C(32 °F)是冰点；37°C(98.6 °F)是人体正常体温；100°C(212 °F)是沸点。

e.g. The temperature will fall to minus five tonight. (-5°C)

今天夜间气温将下降到零下5度。

She's ill in bed with a temperature of a hundred and two degrees Fahrenheit. (102 °F) ≈ (38.9°C)

她卧病在床，体温102华氏度。

11. That would be quite comfortable then.

那一定很舒服了。

would表示推测。

e.g. There is a knock at the door. That would be Mary.

有人敲门。大概是玛丽。

I think they would be working now.

我想他们大概在工作吧。

12. ..., we just want you to enjoy yourselves.

我们只希望你玩得愉快。

“要某人做某事”的英语结构常为“动词+名词/代词+带to不定式”。

这一类的动词我们学过的有：

ask sb to do sth 请求某人做某事

advise sb to do sth 建议某人做某事

expect sb to do sth 盼望某人做某事

invite sb to do sth 邀请某人做某事

order sb to do sth 命令某人做某事

recommend sb to do sth 建议某人做某事

tell sb to do sth 告诉某人做某事

teach sb to do sth 教某人做某事

13. This year we have arranged a number of coach tours in Beijing and around Beijing for people interested in seeing the capital city.

今年，我们为想看看首都的人安排了大巴游览北京市区和北京近郊。

a number of 是“若干”，“许多”的意思。它所修饰的名词总是复数形式，谓语要用复数形式。

e.g. A number of new products have been produced.

许多新产品已经生产出来。

the number of 指“…的总数”，“这个数目”的意思，谓语要用单数。

e.g. The number of students in this university is over 3 000.

该校的学生人数在3 000以上。

14. For those who prefer to do something more energetic, we offer a wide variety of holidays where our trained experts will be ready to give you all the help and guidance you need.

对那些喜欢更为活跃活动的游客，我们为他们安排了各种各样的休假活动，聘请训练有素的专家随时为您提供各种帮助和指导。

... something more energetic 更为活跃的活动

more energetic为后置形容词定语。不定代词something, anything, nothing等被形容词修饰时，形容词定语要后置。

e.g. There is nothing wrong with this VCD.

这台VCD没什么毛病。

Is there anything wrong with my heart, doctor?

医生，我的心脏有问题吗？

Nothing serious.

不严重。

a variety of “各种各样的”与名词一起作主语时，谓语要用复数形式；the variety of “种

类”，与名词连用作主语，谓语用单数形式。

e.g. There are a variety of books in that bookstore.

那家书店有各种各样的图书。

The variety of goods on sale in that shop is surprising.

那家商店货物的品种多得惊人。

15. If you haven't yet decided on your holiday, why not look through this brochure?

如果您还没有决定怎样度假，为什么不看看这本旅游手册呢？

decided on/against sth/sb 决定（做/不做…）

e.g. There were a variety of computers for us to choose. At last we decided on one made in China.

有许多种电脑供我们挑选，最后我们决定买台国产的。

We have decided on Dalian for our holiday.

我们决定到大连度假。

16. ... all you have to do is to email us as soon as possible.

…您只需要尽快发电子邮件通知我们即可。

all作主语时，谓语动词既可用复数形式，也可用单数形式，取决于其所指的名词的性质。

e.g. All of the students were present.

所有的学生都出席了。

All the money is mine.

所有的钱都是我的。

All is not gold that glitters.

发光的东西不一定是金子。

III 词汇用法 (Word Usage)

amazing *a.* wonderful; astonishing 令人大为惊奇的；令人非常好奇的

e.g. What an amazing achievement!

多么了不起的成就！

These pictures by the children are in amazing colors.

孩子们的绘画着色令人惊讶。

assist *v.* to give help or support to, especially as a subordinate or supplement; aid 帮助；

给…帮助或支持，扶助

e.g. The nurse assisted the patient to his feet.

护士搀扶病人站起来。

Her breathing was assisted by a respirator.

她要靠呼吸器帮助呼吸。

circumstance *n.* (usu. *pl.*) fact, occurrence, or condition 情况（一般用复数）

e.g. We can't judge what he did till we know all the circumstances.

我们只有在了解了全部情况后才能对他的做法做出判断。
She can't remember all the circumstances of the quarrel.
她记不清争吵的全部情况了。

due (to) *a.* because of; owing to 由于; 因为

e.g. The delay was due to power failure.

延误是由于停电。

His success is due to hard work.

他的成功是努力工作的结果。

energetic *a.* full of energy, powerfully active 精力旺盛的, 有力的

e.g. I don't feel energetic enough to rush about, so I'll sit down.

我觉得没精力到处乱跑了, 所以我得歇一歇。

I never saw such an energetic child.

我从没有见过精力如此旺盛的孩子。

extra *a.* additional; more than usual or necessary or expected 额外的; 外加的

e.g. If you do extra work, you can get an extra pay.

做额外的工作, 可以获得额外的报酬。

They have to run extra trains on holidays.

他们不得不在假日增开列车。

formation *n.* forming; things formed 形成; 构成

e.g. School life has a great influence on the formation of a child's character.

学校生活对孩子的品德培养有很大的影响。

The formation of good habits is not an easy thing.

培养良好的习惯并非易事。

guidance *n.* guiding, being guided; advice on problems 指导; 指引

e.g. I do need your guidance with my studies.

我在学习上很需要你的指导。

A son needs a father's guidance.

儿子需要父亲的指导。

impossible *a.* not possible 不可能的

e.g. Nothing is impossible to a willing mind (heart).

世上无难事, 只怕有心人。

You ask me to make a speech. It's impossible.

你让我演讲, 绝不可能。

individual *a.* of or relating to an individual 个体的; 个人的; 单个的

n. a single human being 个体的人 (被认为是与社会或群体对立的单个的人)

e.g. The artist has an individual style of painting.

这位艺术家有着独特的绘画风格。

She wears very individual hairstyle.

她的发型非常独特。

His grandpa is a rather odd individual.

他的祖父是一个颇为奇特的人。

The rights of the individual should be respected.

个人权利应当得到尊重。

Each individual girl in the group has her own task.

这个组里的每一个女孩都有自己的任务。

rare *a.* seldom done or found or occurring, uncommon 罕见的, 少有的

e.g. It's very rare for him to be late.

他很少迟到。

These flowers are very rare in this country.

这些花在这个地区很少见。

responsibility *n.* being responsible; charge for which one is responsible 责任, 职责; 任务

e.g. Mary is a woman with many responsibilities.

玛丽是一位负有许多职责的女士。

He is a husband with no sense of responsibility.

他是一个没有责任心的丈夫。

satisfy *v.* fulfil expectations or desires of; please 使满意; 满足

e.g. That answer won't satisfy her.

那个答案不会使她满意的。

Some people are hard to satisfy.

有些人很难满足。

success *n.* favorable outcome, accomplishment of what was aimed at 成功

e.g. Both plans have been tried without success.

两个计划都已试过但未获成功。

He is a great success as a teacher.

作为一名教师, 他非常出色。

suit *v.* to satisfy or please 适合

e.g. Will that time suit you?

你那个时间合适吗?

The dress suits you very well.

这件连衣裙你穿很合身。

unfortunately *ad.* used to say that a particular situation or fact makes you sad or disappointed

不幸地, 可惜地, 遗憾地

e.g. Unfortunately, he lost his job.

不幸的是, 他失业了。

Unfortunately, the lecture was one of the dullest.

不幸得很, 这次演讲是最乏味的一次。

make sure make or become certain, ensure 确信, 确保

e.g. She made sure that she had turned off the gas.

她确定她已关掉煤气。

Make sure to turn off the radio before you go out.

出门之前一定要关掉收音机。

do one's best do all one can 尽最大努力

e.g. We did our best, but we failed.

我们尽了最大努力, 但未成功。

I'll do my best to help you.

我会尽最大努力帮你。



V. 练习指导及补充练习 (Guide to Exercises and Supplementary Exercises)

1. Check your understanding 的目的是检验学生对有关对话及短文的理解, 教师应注意引导学生用自己的语言回答, 并围绕这些练习就对话与课文的内容与词汇、句型等用法进行口头训练, 不要把它们只作为理解练习使用。

补充练习如下:

For Dialogue B

Answer the following questions briefly according to Dialogue B.

- 1) Which city are Mr. and Mrs. Wright visiting? (Dalian.)
- 2) Where are they staying? (At the Lantian Hotel.)
- 3) How far is it from the hotel to the beach? (Only about a ten-minute walk.)
- 4) What's the highest temperature there? (About 28°C.)
- 5) How do Mr. and Mrs. Wright like Xinghai Park? (They think it looks marvelous.)

For Passage A

Are the following statements true (T) or false (F) according to Passage A?

- 1) The passage is about a travel agency.
- 2) The travel agency has been planning holidays for more than twenty years.
- 3) The travel agency has arranged tours both at home and abroad.
- 4) The travel agency aims to suit the individual needs.
- 5) If you want to cancel your booking at a later date, the travel agency will charge you a small extra fee.

答案:

- 1) T 2) T 3) F 4) T 5) T

2. Learn to communicate 的目的是对本课重点句型的总结归纳, 此外口语中常见的句子还有:

Conversation between a visitor and a local citizen

The visitor	The local citizen
Excuse me. Do you live here?	Yes, I've lived here all my life.
How do you do?/Hello./Hi!	How do you do./Hello./Hi!
Glad to meet you.	Glad to meet you, too.
My name is ...	I'm ...
I'm staying here for a day/two days/a week.	How long are you staying here?
What can I see in a day/two days/a week?	I recommend you (should) visit ... I suggest a trip to ...
What is ...?	It's a beautiful scenic spot in ...
Then I must go and visit it.	It is worth visiting. You'll see I'm right.

Conversation between the guide and the visitor

Here we are. This is the Lantian Hotel/the zoo/the park.

Oh! What a lovely place!

How far is it from here to the beach/the park/the Great Wall?

It's about a ten-minute walk/drive/ride.

Would you like to visit the International Fair?

I've been looking forward to a chance to go there.

Talking about the weather

How is the weather today?

It's warm/cold/cloudy/cool/fine today.

What's the weather like in Beijing/London/New York?

It's nice/sunny/stormy/windy.

What was the weather like yesterday?

It rained/snowed in the morning/in the afternoon.

What will the weather be like tomorrow?

It is going to rain/snow.

The summer is marvelous here.

Do you get much rain during the summer?

Sometimes we get a lot of rain, but sometimes we don't.

What's the temperature today?

It's about 21°C (twenty-one degrees Centigrade)

The temperature is about zero degrees Centigrade.

What's the highest/lowest temperature today?

The highest/lowest temperature is 3°C below/above zero.

The weather here is mild. The average temperature here is 21°C.

There is a great/small difference in temperature between day and night.

3. Build up your language stock 是对本课出现的词语的巩固练习。练习9 (句型套用) 是为学生学习掌握本课重要句型专门补充编写的。这种句型套用练习可引导学生深入理解句子结构及其精妙之处, 并在此基础上模拟套用这些句型, 学习效果十分显著。因此教师要作为重点练习在课上引导学生完成这一练习, 还可要求他们在练习的基础上背诵这些句型。教师还可以在检查学生做好书中练习的基础上, 补充下列练习。

词汇补充练习:

(汉译英:)

- 1) 谁负责这项工作? (responsible)
- 2) 不管约翰怎么努力工作, 都不能使他的老板满意。(satisfy)
- 3) 我们会尽一切努力来帮助您。(assist)
- 4) 造成事故的原因很多。(a variety of)
- 5) 他们最后成功地解决了这些问题。(succeed)
- 6) 买这样一个玻璃碗你花了多少钱? (charge)
- 7) 生产者应该尽量满足人们的需要。(suit one's needs)
- 8) 据说那次会议十分成功。(success)
- 9) 这家宾馆的服务使客人感到很舒服。(comfortable)
- 10) 我们的职责就是保证您在这里住得愉快。(make sure)

(汉译英答案:)

- 1) Who is responsible for this job?
- 2) No matter how hard John worked, he couldn't satisfy his boss.
- 3) We'll try our best to assist you.
- 4) There are a variety of causes for the accident.
- 5) Finally they succeeded in solving these problems.
- 6) How much did they charge you for such a glass bowl?
- 7) Producers should do everything they can to suit people's needs.
- 8) It is said that the meeting is a big success.
- 9) The service at this hotel makes guests comfortable.
- 10) Our responsibility is to make sure that you'll stay here happily.

(英译汉:)

- 1) The weather varies from day to day.
- 2) His business is a success, and he has made a lot of money.
- 3) It suits me if you come to see me on Sunday.
- 4) You have to pay a small extra fee if you want to change your booking at a later date.
- 5) This car accident was due to driving at high speed.
- 6) His aim is to further his study at Yale University.
- 7) The businessman charged me too much money.
- 8) This sort of bird is very rare in this country.

(英译汉答案:)

- 1) 天气天天变化。
- 2) 他的生意很成功，赚了不少钱。
- 3) 如果你星期天来看我，时间对我很合适。
- 4) 如果您以后需要作出变动，您得付少量的费用。
- 5) 这是一起由于高速行驶而引起的交通事故。
- 6) 他的目标是能在耶鲁大学深造。
- 7) 这个商人要我的钱太多了。
- 8) 这种鸟在这个国家很稀有。

4. Extra reading 的目的是锻炼学生的独立阅读能力。教师宜在课上限时完成，可提出简短的问题让学生口头回答，书中的理解性练习可留给学生自己课后完成。

5. Passage B 为主课文A的补充短文，分别设有阅读理解和句型翻译套写两项练习，其中的重要词汇注释如下：

Passage B的重要词汇注释如下

absolutely *ad.* 完全地；绝对地

e.g. It's absolutely impossible.

这绝对不可能。

belt *n.* 带子

e.g. Please keep your seat belt fastened.

请系紧好安全带。

calm *a.* 平稳的

e.g. He was calm when I told him the bad news.

当我告诉他这个坏消息时，他很平静。

captain *n.* 船长；机长

e.g. His grandpa used to be a captain.
他的爷爷过去曾当过船长。

crash *v.* 坠毁 *n.* 碰撞

e.g. The two cars crashed into each other.
两辆小汽车轰然相撞。

The car hit the tree with a crash.
汽车轰隆一声撞到树上。

excuse *v.* 打扰一下，原谅 *n.* 借口

e.g. Readers must excuse the author's youth and inexperience.
读者要宽恕作者的年轻和缺乏经验。

Excuse me. Could I borrow your pen?
对不起，我可以借你的笔用一下吗？

Ignorance is no excuse for breaking the law.
无知不能成为违法的理由。

fasten *v.* 拴紧，使固定

e.g. Fasten your seat belts, please!
请系上安全带！

fortunately *ad.* 幸运地

e.g. Fortunately the plane was on time.
幸好飞机按时到达。

frightened *a.* 害怕的；恐慌的

e.g. Don't be frightened.
别害怕。

funny *a.* 好笑的

e.g. I heard such a funny joke last night.
昨天晚上我听到一个非常有趣的笑话。

hate *v.* 憎恨；不喜欢

e.g. The kind-hearted people hate wars.
善良的人们憎恨战争。

I hate to trouble him.
我真不想去麻烦他。

imagine *v.* 想象

e.g. She imagines herself to be a true artist.
她幻想自己成为一名真正的艺术家。

slight *a.* 轻微的

e.g. I have a slight headache.
我有一点头疼。

wing *n.* 翅膀；机翼 *v.* 飞

e.g. The bird's wings got wounded in the storm.

鸟翼在风暴中受伤。

The airplanes winged their way to the south.

飞机飞向南方。

wonder *v.* 怀疑; 惊讶 *n.* 奇迹

e.g. I wondered what was going on there.

我想知道那儿发生了什么。

The Great Wall is one of the wonders of the world.

长城是世界奇观之一。

6. 本课的Applied Writing

为练习套写英文旅游广告, 学生应记住常用的广告词语, 包括其比较固定的语言格式和专门用语。

7. 本课的Pick Up Your Grammar

为复习主动语态与被动语态。教师还可根据学生的实际水平补充少量短句进行口头语法练习。



VI. 练习答案 (Key to Exercises)

Key to Integrated Skills Development

1. American.
2. A mechanical engineer.
3. On business.
4. One day.
5. The Golden Stone Beach.
2. 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. T
3. 1. To suit the individual needs of tourists.
2. To make sure that a traveler's holiday is a success.
3. The trained experts.
4. To please them./To make them pleased.
5. To book early.
6. Let the travel agency know as soon as possible by email.

Key to Applied Writing

Sightseeing Dalian China

CHILDREN FREE
 (Limit Three Per Family)
 For information and reservations:
 Call (0411) 846744××
 Or contact your hotel reception

Key to Pick Up Your Grammar

1. The beautiful farm should be visited in the autumn.
2. All the methods will be used in the experiment.
3. The students might be troubled with the housing problem.
4. The office hour should be used to help the students with their studies.
5. Can this job be done in that way?
6. The medicine must be taken three times a day.
7. Which office should be equipped with new computers?
8. Which books can be bought in the bookstore?



高等教育出版社

VII. 课文参考译文 (Text Translation for Reference)

对话 A: 到大连旅游

克里斯·哈德森是美国人。现在，他正在和一位名叫付琴的大连本地人谈话。

克里斯： 打扰一下，您是本地人吗？

付琴： 是的，我在大连住了一辈子。我叫付琴。你好。

克里斯： 你好。我叫克里斯·哈德森，是美国人。我是一名机械工程师。我在去青岛出差途中，路过大连。

付琴： 你在大连要待多长时间？

克里斯： 就一天。24小时里我能看点什么呢？

付琴： 嗯，大多数游客想看看金石滩。

克里斯： 金石滩是什么？

付琴： 金石滩是大连北部的一处风景区。据说那里奇异的礁石和罕见的地貌巧夺

天工。

克里斯：那我一定得去看看了。

对话 B: 莱特夫妇在大连

莱特夫妇在大连观光旅游。现在，莱特夫人正在和导游谈话。

导游：我们到了。这就是蓝天旅馆。

莱特夫人：啊，这地方真漂亮。这儿离海滨多远？

导游：走路10分钟就到了。

莱特夫人：真不错。今天很暖和。这里最热的月份气温有多少度？

导游：大约28℃。

莱特夫人：那一定很舒服了。

导游：看，莱特夫人，那是星海公园。

莱特夫人：噢，看起来美极了。

短文 A: 北京旅行社

20多年来，北京旅行社一直在为各种各样的游客安排度假。我们从来不许诺不可能做到的事情。我们只希望你玩得愉快。我们旅行社的领导亲自负责安排，保证您的假期过得愉快。今年，我们为想看看首都的人安排了大巴游览北京市区和北京近郊。对那些喜欢更活跃活动的游客，我们为他们安排了各种各样的休假活动，聘请训练有素的专家随时提供各种帮助和指导。我们的目标是让游客高兴。

如果您还没有决定怎样度假，为什么不看看这本旅游手册呢？您做出选择后，请给我们打电话。我们会尽全力为您服务。但我们建议您早点预订。不用担心取消预订。如果您过后需要作出变动，您只需要尽快发电子邮件通知我们即可。我们会尽最大努力让您满意。但是，为此我们得收取少量的服务费。另外，如果由于一些非我们所能控制的因素而不得不改变您的旅行计划和安排的话，我们旅行社保留作出变更的权利。

短文 B: 我讨厌乘飞机旅行

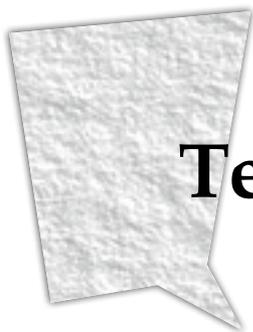
在去机场的路上，出租车司机告诉我说他迷了路，当时我就知道到这一天不会顺利。无论怎样我最终还是设法赶到了机场，最后一个登上了飞机。

我找到自己的座位，发现旁边是一个得了重感冒的4岁男孩。我坐下来，心想不知还会出现什么不对劲的事。

飞机起飞几分钟后出现了奇怪的声音，什么都开始摇晃起来。烟从机翼处冒出来。这时我满脑子想的都是“飞机发动机着火了，我们要坠毁了”。你想象得出我当时多么害怕。

就在这时，机长以非常镇静的声音开始讲话：“女士们，先生们，这里是机长向你们说话。我们的一个发动机出了点技术故障，我们就要返回机场。根本不必惊慌。请坐在自己的座位上别动，系好安全带。”

幸运的是，机长完美无误地把飞机降落在跑道上。一切都过去了，我们安全了。但是我已经下定决心，从今以后旅行时再也不乘坐飞机了。我讨厌乘飞机旅行。



Test 1 (Unit 1 — Unit 6)



Scripts:

Part I Listening Comprehension

Section A

Directions: *This section is to test your ability to give proper answers to questions. There are 5 recorded questions in it. After each question, there is a pause. The questions will be spoken twice. When you hear a question, you should decide on the correct answer from the 4 choices marked A, B, C and D given in your test paper.*

1. Are you free tonight?
2. Would you like a cup of tea?
3. Have you ever been to Beijing?
4. Do you know how to get to the station, please?
5. Do you stay up late at night?

Section B

Directions: *This section is to test your ability to understand short dialogues. There are 5 recorded dialogues in it. After each dialogue, there is a recorded question. Both the dialogue and the question will be spoken twice. When you hear a question, you should decide on the correct answer from the 4 choices marked A, B, C and D given in your test paper.*

6. M: Some more drinks perhaps?
W: No, thanks. Just bring me the bill.
Q: What is the probable relationship between the two speakers?
7. M: Hello, Linda. This is Bob. Is Tom home?
W: No. He has gone shopping.
Q: Where is Tom most likely to be at the moment?
8. W: Do you know when the flight arrives?

- M: Yes, it should arrive at 6:00 p.m., but it has been delayed for three hours.
 Q: When will the plane arrive?
 9. W: I'd like to ask the Smiths to the party. Do you know their address?
 M: Sorry, I don't. But I think Allen does.
 Q: What will the woman probably do next?
 10. M: Helen doesn't take a part-time job this term.
 W: No. She has got a scholarship.
 Q: What is implied about Helen?

Section C

Directions: *In this section, you will hear a recorded short passage. The passage is printed in the test paper, but with some words or phrases missing. The passage will be read three times. During the second reading, you are required to put in the missing words or phrases. The third reading is for you to check your writing. Now the passage will begin.*

The life of a successful pop singer is not at all easy. He can only relax when he is alone, because everything he does is watched and reported in the special newspaper written for the “fans”. The fans are very important for him. They buy his records, they go to his concerts, and they make him rich and famous. But they also steal handkerchiefs. They tear off buttons. They even cut off pieces of the unfortunate singer's hair. Many singers have been forced to hide. A pop singer has to spend a lot of money on clothes, because he must always look smart, or, at any rate, different. And — most important — he must always keep smiling.

Key to Test One (Unit 1 — Unit 6)

Part I Listening Comprehension

Section A

1. D 2. B 3. D 4. A 5. C

Section B

6. C 7. B 8. C 9. B 10. A

Section C

11. relax 12. special 13. steal 14. hide 15. smart

Part II Vocabulary & Structure

16. D 17. B 18. A 19. B 20. D
 21. graduation 22. refusal 23. encourages 24. professional 25. complaint

Part III Reading Comprehension**Task 1**

26. D 27. C 28. B 29. D 30. A

Task 2

31. C 32. C 33. D 34. A 35. B

Part IV Translation

36. I took English, computer science, typing and some other subjects.
37. She is likely to get the secretary's job.
38. Your résumé should include the education you have received.
39. 她希望毕业后到国外进一步深造。
40. 我想请我的导师为我写一封推荐信。

Part V Writing

For reference:

To Whom It May Concern:

Dear Sirs,

I have searched the Internet and found that your center offers the English courses I am interested in, and I would appreciate it very much if you could forward the necessary registration forms and information for visa application.

My email address is Zhang@163.com.

You can also reach me at the following address:

Zhang Dawei (Dawei Zhang)
Department of Physics,
Binhai University,
Liaoning Province, 116045,
China

Many thanks for taking the time and effort to help me.

Yours faithfully,
Zhang Dawei

Unit

7

Welcome!



I. 教学时间分配 (Time Allocation)

本单元共需4~5学时，对话1学时；课文A及练习2~3学时，课文B、语法等1学时（教师可根据本课内容的难易程度稍作增减）。Extra reading的目的为锻炼学生的独立阅读能力。教师宜在课上限时完成，可提出简短的问题让学生口头回答，书中的理解性练习可留给学生自己课后完成。



II. 教学目的与要求 (Aims and Requirements)

I 内容重点 (Language Focus)

1. 交际重点 (Communicative Focus)

邀请外国友人到家中做客，涉及邀请、约定时间、表示感谢等。

2. 重点训练单词和词组 (Focal Words and Expressions)

colleague, comment, finish, host, invitation, occasion, particular, permission, politeness, specify, technician, have ... over, change one's mind, be particular about, no later than, show around, for the sake of

3. 重点句型和习惯表达法 (Focal Functions and Patterns)

Making an invitation

- 1) Do you feel like going to see a movie Friday night?
- 2) Say, are you doing anything Saturday night?
- 3) How about having dinner together this evening?
- 4) Do you want to have lunch together tomorrow?
- 5) Would you like to have lunch together Saturday evening?
- 6) I was wondering if you'd like to go swimming this weekend.
- 7) Would you like to go to a concert on Friday?
- 8) We'd like to have you and your wife over for dinner this Saturday evening.
- 9) I'd like to have a few people over for dinner this evening.
- 10) Would you be able to come?
- 11) We hope you'll be able to join us.

Accepting an invitation

- 1) I'd really like to.
- 2) Oh. That's a terrific idea.
- 3) Sure, why not? That's a great idea.
- 4) We'd be very happy to come.
- 5) We'll be looking forward to it.
- 6) I'll have to check, but I'm pretty sure it'll be all right.
- 7) Oh, yes. I'd love to.
- 8) Oh, yes. I'd like to very much.
- 9) Oh, yes. That sounds very nice.

Showing thanks after dinner

- 1) Thanks, it's been a marvelous evening.
- 2) It was very kind of you to invite us.
- 3) We enjoyed ourselves very much.
- 4) I've really had a wonderful time.
- 5) Thank you very much for inviting me.
- 6) Thanks again for a lovely evening.
- 7) Don't mention it. It is nice to see you again.

Replying to thanks

- 1) I'm glad you could come, and you must come again.
- 2) You are quite welcome, Michael.
- 3) I'm delighted you could come.

技能要求 (Skills Development)

1 听说 (Listening and Speaking)

能听懂用英语进行的有关邀请朋友进餐、在餐桌上待客等简短对话，培养宴请外宾的初步能力。

2 读译 (Reading and Translating)

能读懂和翻译有关邀请客人的短文。

3 写 (Applied Writing)

- A. 能将所学的宴请及邀请用语进行英汉互译。
B. 了解英文赴宴邀请函的基本写作格式。

**III. 背景资料 (Background Information)****请客 (Dinner Invitations)**

Dinner at the home of an American family is likely to be an easy and informal occasion. You will probably be served “family style”. This means that plates of food will be passed from person to person, or the host or hostess may serve from one end of the table. Members of the family of all ages eat together. Usually, the wife prepares the meal, the husband serves the cocktails, and the wife or children clear the dishes from the table.

Whether or not you help with the dishes after dinner will vary, depending on how often you have been at the home and the family itself. Many families do not permit guests to help at all on the first visit, but if they become frequent guests in the house, they gradually join in with the various daily activities of the family. Indeed, Americans like to say to their guests, “Make yourself at home”.

If for religious or any other reasons, there is some food you cannot eat, just leave it on the plate; otherwise, tell your hostess in advance what you cannot eat. As we all know, each country has its own kinds of food, its special dishes, and its own tastes. However, like hostesses everywhere, there is no doubt that your hostess will be delighted if you enjoy the meal.

**IV. 语言点 (Language Points)****I 课文补充注释 (Notes to Dialogues and Passage A)****1. Welcome!**

欢迎光临!

welcome 在本文是感叹词。“欢迎到(来)…”英语的表达方式是Welcome to ...。

e.g. Welcome to China.

欢迎到中国来。

Welcome to our home.

欢迎到我们家里来。

Welcome to Mr. Smith.

欢迎史密斯先生。

welcome 也可用作及物动词和形容词。

e.g. The new novel is warmly welcomed by the readers.

新小说受到读者的热烈欢迎。

They welcomed him with flowers.

他们用鲜花欢迎他。

All suggestions are welcome.

欢迎各种建议。

You are welcome to try, but you won't succeed.

欢迎你一试，但你不会成功。

另外，You are welcome 可用作答谢语，译作“不用客气”。

— Thank you.

— You are welcome.

2. Wang Tao is working in a joint venture.

王涛在一家合资企业工作。

joint *a.* 共同的，共有的，a joint venture/enterprise 合资企业

e.g. This is our joint bank account.

这是我们的共同银行账户。

That is a joint venture.

那是一家合资企业。

3. Are you doing anything Saturday evening?

星期六晚上有事吗？

“be + doing” 进行时可以表示将来时间，常用的动词有：go, come, leave, start等，后面也常用表示较近的将来时间状语，如tomorrow, tonight, this Friday等，表示安排或计划好了的即将进行的行为。

e.g. The train is leaving at three o'clock this afternoon.

火车下午3点发车。

They are coming to see you this Friday.

这个星期五他们来看你。

4. Would you be able to come?

你能来吗？

与can（表示“能力”）比较，be able to 可用于各种时态形式，can只有现在式和过去式。

e.g. Bob is able to (can) speak English and Chinese.（现在式）

鲍勃会讲英语和汉语。

Bob was able to (could) run very fast when he was young.（过去式）

鲍勃年轻时能跑得很快。

但表示将来及完成时态，只能用will/shall be able to 和 have (has) been able to。

e.g. If you don't apply soon, you won't be able to get this job. (将来式)

快点儿申请，要不然就得不到那份工作了。

The girl has been able to play the piano since she was six. (完成式)

这个女孩从6岁起就会弹钢琴了。

在描述一个具体行为圆满完成时，一般不用could，而用was/were able to, managed to 或者 succeeded in + doing。

e.g. I talked a long time, and in the end I was able to/managed to make her believe me.

I talked a long time, and in the end, I succeeded in making her believe me.

我谈了很久，最后终于使她相信了我。

假如动作或行为未能圆满完成，则可以用couldn't。

e.g. I tried for hours, but I couldn't make her believe me.

虽经过好几个钟头的努力，我还是未能使她相信我。

5. And we hope you'll be able to join us.

我们希望你们能和我们一起吃饭。

比较：hope与wish

hope和wish之后都可接不定式或宾语从句，意为“想”，“希望”。对于有可能实现的希望用hope；只表示主观愿望而不考虑实现的可能性或对于不可能实现的主观愿望则用wish。

e.g. He hopes to become a doctor.

他希望成为一个医生。(他有机会学习并有可能成为医生。)

I hope you will pass the exam.

我希望你能通过考试。(我认为这是有可能的。)

I hope you will help me with my grammar.

我希望你会帮助我学习语法。(我想让你这样做，而且相信你会这样做。)

I wish to go.

我想去。(只是我的主观愿望。)

I wish I were a bird.

但愿我是一只小鸟。(这是不可能的。)

I wish you would help me with my grammar.

但愿你能帮助我学习语法。(我很想这样，但从你的态度判断似乎不大可能。)

wish后可接含不定式做宾语补足语的复合宾语，而hope则不行。因此可以说sb wishes sb to do sth但不能说sb hopes sb to do sth。

e.g. Do you really wish me to do that job?

你真的希望我做那项工作吗?

We wish the matter to be settled as soon as possible.

我们希望问题尽快得到解决。

wish之后可接双宾语，表示祝愿；hope不行。

e.g. I wish you success.

祝你成功。

I wish you a Happy New Year.
祝你新年快乐。

6. How does 7:00 sound?

7点怎么样?

sound在这里是系词, 故此句的答语可以是: 7:00 sounds good.

类似含义的句子还有:

- 1) Does 7:00 suit you?
- 2) What about 7:00?
- 3) How about 7:00?
- 4) Let's decide on 7:00, shall we?
- 5) Well, then, suppose we meet at 7:00?
- 6) Could I make it at 7:00?

7. Bob Anderson and his wife, Anna, are about to leave.

鲍勃和夫人安娜准备告辞。

be about to + 不定式, “即将(正要)做某事”

比较: be to + 不定式与 be about to + 不定式

be to + 不定式的用法有三:

1) 表示按计划、安排即将发生的行为。

e.g. We are to employ someone to work as a receptionist.

我们计划招聘一名接待员。

They are to stay in a youth hostel tonight.

今晚他们要住在一家青年招待所。

2) 常见于报纸和广播, 用以宣布官方的计划或决定。

e.g. The Foreign Minister is to make a statement tomorrow.

外长将于明天发表声明。

The President is to visit China next year.

总统将于明年访华。

3) 表示命令、禁止等。常用于正式文体, 主要用于第三人称。

You are to stay here, Tom.

汤姆, 你得留在这里。

be about to + 不定式, 则表示“马上就要发生的事”, 等于 be on the point of “正要”, 比 be to 表示的时间更为紧迫。

e.g. Look! The race is about to start. (The race is just going to start. / The race is on the point of starting.)

看! 比赛就要开始了。

He was about to rob the bank when he saw a police car coming.

他刚要抢银行, 突然看到一辆警车驶过来了。

I was about to leave when the telephone rang.

我正要走时, 电话铃响了。

8. They expressed their thanks to Wang Tao and his wife, Li Hui.

他们向王涛和他的妻子李卉表示谢意。

express one's thanks to ... “向…表示谢意”

e.g. Please allow me to express my thanks to your family.

请允许我向您的家人表示谢意。

We expressed our thanks to our host.

我们向主人表示谢意。

9. It was very kind of you to invite us.

十分感谢你们的邀请。

比较：

It is + *adj.* + of + sb + to 不定式与 It is + *adj.* + for + sb + to 不定式

在表示人物性格、特征等形容词的后面，常用of引出不定式的逻辑主语。因此，“It is + *adj.* + of + sb + to 不定式”这一句式可改写为 sb + is/are + *adj.* + to 不定式。

e.g. It is very kind of you to say so. → You are very kind to say so.

你能这样说真是太好了。

It was foolish of her to make such a mistake. → She was foolish to make such a mistake.

她犯了这种错误真是太愚蠢了。

常见的这类形容词有：

brave (勇敢的)	careful (仔细的)	careless (粗心的)	
clever (聪明的)	foolish (愚蠢的)	good (友善的)	
honest (诚实的)	kind (善良的)	nice (正派的)	
polite (有礼貌的)	right (正确的)	wise (明智的)	wrong (错误的)

如果不定式结构的逻辑主语不能改为句子的主语，就要用for引出不定式的逻辑主语。

e.g. 正：It is challenging for him to take over the job as manager.

误：He is challenging to take over the job as manager.

他接任经理职务很有挑战性。

正：It is difficult for a foreigner to learn Chinese.

误：A foreigner is difficult to learn Chinese.

外国人学汉语很难。

10. Americans arrange the table and food for the number of guests they have invited.

美国人一般按照他们邀请的客人的数目安排餐桌和饮食。

宴请宾客时欧美人一般都事先约定，按照邀请的人数安排饭菜以避免浪费。因此，一旦接受邀请，请一定设法前往赴宴。句中they have invited是定语从句，修饰guests，省略了在从句中做宾语的关联词that。

11. But they do not expect you to come “on time” rather 15 minutes later than the time specified.

但是他们并不期望你准点到达。他们更希望你比约定的时间晚到15分钟。

在美国到朋友家做客，应该比约定时间晚十五分钟到达。如果你晚到十五分钟以上，应当先打电话通知女主人，告诉她你什么时候能到。

rather ... than 是…而不是, 应…而不

e.g. His age, she thought, would be rather over thirty than under it.

她猜想他的年龄应该在30岁以上, 而不是30岁以下。

This is rather for father to decide than for you.

这件事应该由父亲决定, 而不是由你来决定。

12. ... but they do not expect you to touch everything you see.

但是他们不希望你去动所看到的東西。

you see是定语从句, 先行词everything之后的关系代词that省略。当先行词是all, everything, something, nothing等不定代词时, 用关系代词that, 不用which, 且起宾语作用的关系代词常常省略。

e.g. I'm interested in all (that) you have told me.

我对你告诉我的一切都感兴趣。

Everything that can be done has been done.

能做的都做了。

13. If you are interested in something you see, you should ask for permission to touch it.

如果要动你感兴趣的东西, 得征得主人的同意。

ask for permission 征得同意

e.g. They asked for permission to enter the factory.

他们要求同意他们进厂。

He asked for permission to go into the lab.

他请求允许进入实验室。

14. At the table, conversation is general but you should comment on how good the food is.

在餐桌上, 话题可以很广泛, 但是你应当对饮食给予肯定的评价。

comment about/on 评论, 发表意见

e.g. How did they comment on the football match?

他们对这场足球比赛评价如何?

The president refused to comment on this matter.

总统拒绝对此事发表评论。

15. Except on a very formal occasion, it is all right to help yourself to more food.

除非在特别正式场合, 你都可以自己动手添加食物。

比较: besides, except, except for

besides和except都可作“除…之外”解, 但二者意思有所不同, besides表示“除…之外另外还有”的意思, 即“原有数上再加…”之意; 而except则是“除去”的意思, 是“原有数中减去…”之意。

e.g. Besides English, we learn Chinese, PE and physics.

除了学英语之外, 我们还学语文、体育和物理。

All are present except Bob.

除了鲍勃没来, 别人都来了。

except for则表示“例外”部分。

e.g. His composition is good, except for some spelling mistakes.

他的这篇文章写得很好，只是有几处拼写错误。

Except for an old lady, the bus was empty.

除了一位老太太之外，公共汽车空无一人。

词汇用法 (Word Usage)

colleague *n.* a fellow worker esp. in a profession 同事；同行

e.g. The teacher's colleagues taught his classes while he was ill.

这位教师生病期间，他的同事替他上课。

He is getting along well with his colleagues.

他和同事们相处得很好。

comment *v.* (on, upon) to make a remark; give an opinion 议论；评论

e.g. Everyone commented on her new hat.

人人都对她的新帽子品评一番。

Mr. Brown would not comment on the rumor that he would run for governor.

布朗先生对谣传说他竞选州长的事不加评论。

finish *v.* to come or bring to an end; complete 结束；完成

e.g. When will you finish your college course?

你什么时候大学毕业？

I haven't finished reading that book yet.

我还没读完那本书。

host *n.* a man who receive guests 主人

e.g. He acted as host to visitors.

他以主人的身份接待来客。

We thanked our host for a wonderful party.

我们感谢主人举办了一个美好的晚会。

invitation *n.* a written request to go somewhere or do something; the act of inviting 请柬；邀请

e.g. Have you received a wedding invitation from Susan's sister?

你是否已经收到苏珊妹妹寄来的结婚请柬？

We haven't got the invitation to the party yet.

我们还没有收到参加聚会的请柬。

We accepted her invitation to dinner.

我们接受了她吃饭的邀请。

She never gave any such invitation.

她从未发出这类邀请。

occasion *n.* a time when something happens 时刻；时机

e.g. On that occasion I was not at home.

当时我不在家。

The manager has said this on several occasions.

经理已经好几次说过这个问题。

particular *a.* not general or universal; separate and distinct from others of the same group, category, or nature; exceptional 单独的；特殊的，特定的；与众不同的

n. an individual item, fact, or detail 一项、一条事实或细节

e.g. These overseas students have a particular preference for Chinese art.

这些外国留学生对中国艺术有特别的爱好。

You may make an exception in this particular case.

你可以把这个例子当做例外。

The handbook gives a particular description of the machine.

手册里有对这台机器详尽的描述。

For particulars, apply to the information desk.

详情请向问讯台询问。

permission *n.* an act of permitting; agreement; consent 许可；同意；允许

e.g. We asked for his permission to use the car.

我们请求他允许我们使用那辆汽车。

Did she give you permission?

她向你表示同意了吗？

politeness *n.* good manners, correct social behavior 礼貌；文雅

e.g. For politeness sake Betty asked about his health.

出于礼貌，贝蒂问起他的健康。

What people like about Bob is his politeness.

人们喜欢鲍勃的彬彬有礼。

specify *v.* to mention exactly; choose or name 指定；具体说明，详细说明

e.g. Please specify when you will be away.

请具体说明你不在的日期。

The man delivered the paper as specified.

那人送来了指定的报纸。

technician *n.* a skilled worker in esp. a scientific or industrial subject 技术员，技师

e.g. Skilled electrical technicians are needed to keep this equipment in good running condition.

需要熟练的电气技术员来维护这种设备使之处于良好的运行状态。

We'll send our technicians to repair the machine.

我们将派技术员去维修机器。

change one's mind to change intentions or opinion 改变主意

e.g. I was going to leave tomorrow, but I've changed my mind.

我本来打算明天动身，但是现在改变主意了。

They have changed their minds.

他们改变了主意。

be particular about show (too) much care or interest in small matters; hard to please
(过于)苛求; 讲究, 挑剔

e.g. He is very particular about his tea.

他喝茶很讲究/挑剔。

My elder brother is particular about keeping his stamp collection in order.

我哥哥对集邮的整理非常讲究。

show ... around to be a guide to (someone) on a first visit to a place 带某人游览参观(某地)

e.g. Before you start work, I'll show you around the office.

你开始工作之前, 我将带你参观一下办公室。

The headmaster showed us around the school.

校长带领我们四处看了一下这所学校。

for the sake of for the purpose of 为了...目的

e.g. He's just talking for the sake of hearing his own voice.

他谈话的目的只是为了听到自己的声音。

Diana took the new job for the sake of making more money.

黛安娜为了挣到更多的钱而接受了这项新的工作。

高等教育出版社



V. 练习指导及补充练习 (Guide to Exercises and Supplementary Exercises)

1. Check your understanding 的目的是为了检查学生对A、B两组对话以及课文的理解。

教师在训练中应注意引导学生用自己的语言来回答。

补充练习如下:

For Dialogue A

Choose the best answer according to Dialogue A.

1) Wang Tao is working _____.

A. in a joint venture

B. in a Chinese company

C. in a bank

D. in a supermarket

Yes, I'd love to.

- 3) I wonder if we might meet for lunch tomorrow.

We'll be looking forward to it.

- 4) May we have the honor of having you as our guest?

We're looking forward to the occasion.

- 5) We'd like to have you and your wife over for dinner this Saturday evening.

We'd be very happy to come. What time would you expect us to arrive?

- 6) I'd like to have a few people over for dinner this evening. Would you be able to come?

I'd really like to.

- 7) Would you like to have dinner together Saturday evening?

It's very kind of you to invite me, but I've got a previous engagement.

- 8) We are going to have a party at home this evening. Would you like to join us?

I'm sorry. I'm unable to accept your kind invitation, as I'll be away on a business trip to Beijing.

Receiving guests

- 1) We're glad you could make it today.

- 2) I'm so pleased you could come.

- 3) We've been expecting you.

- 4) Let me have your coat.

- 5) Mr. Smith will join us later.

- 6) We have sent a car for him.

- 7) Shall I get you a drink or something?

- 8) Would you please carry on? I'll be seeing some other guests to the gate.

Showing thanks after dinner

- 1) Thank you for inviting us.

- 2) Thank you for a most enjoyable evening.

- 3) Thank you for all you've done for us.

- 4) I simply don't know how to thank you enough.

3. Build up your language stock 的目的是对本课出现的词语进行巩固练习, 练习8(句型套用)是为学生学习掌握本课重要句型专门补充编写的。这种句型套用练习可引导学生深入理解句子结构及其精妙之处, 并在此基础上模拟套用这些句型, 学习效果十分显著。因此教师要作为重点在课上引导学生完成这一练习, 还可要求他们在练习的基础上背诵这些句型。教师在指导学生做好书中练习的基础上, 可以补充下列练习。

补充练习:

〔汉译英:〕

- 1) 星期六晚上你请谁吃饭了? (have ... over)
- 2) 我们已安排好圣诞节晚上的联欢会。(arrange)
- 3) 鲍勃和妻子向王涛夫妇表示谢意。(express)
- 4) 在正式场合, 人们应该注意着装。(occasion)
- 5) 安娜十分讲究衣着。(particular about)
- 6) 一般说来, 火车总是很正点。(on time)
- 7) 请你明确说明会议在哪儿开。(specify)
- 8) 王教授病得很重, 但他从未跟家人提起。(mention)
- 9) 既然已经决定了, 最好就不要改变主意。(change one's mind)
- 10) 看我的面子, 帮帮他吧。(for the sake of)

〔汉译英答案:〕

- 1) Whom did you have over for dinner on Saturday evening?
- 2) We have arranged the party for Christmas evening.
- 3) Bob and his wife expressed thanks to Wang Tao and his wife.
- 4) On formal occasions, people should pay attention to clothes.
- 5) Anna is particular about what she wears.
- 6) Generally, trains are on time.
- 7) Please specify where to hold the meeting.
- 8) Although Professor Wang was very sick, he never mentioned it to his family.
- 9) Since you have decided, you'd better not change your mind.
- 10) Help him for the sake of me.

〔英译汉:〕

- 1) William stopped smoking for the sake of his health.
- 2) Thanks for the present you sent me on my birthday.
- 3) I wish I had a car.
- 4) It is an American custom to show guests around the house.
- 5) They commented on the newly built buildings.
- 6) Except on formal occasions, Carl is hardly found wearing a business suit.
- 7) We'd like to have a few friends over for dinner tonight.
- 8) It is clearly specified that you are not allowed to use a dictionary in the examination.
- 9) Secretaries in that company are expected to work overtime on Saturdays.
- 10) We are looking forward to spending a white Christmas holiday.

〔英译汉答案:〕

- 1) 威廉为了自己的健康戒烟了。

- 2) 谢谢你送给我的生日礼物。
- 3) 要是我有一辆车多好啊!
- 4) 美国人一般带领客人看一看他们的住房。
- 5) 他们评论了那些新建的楼房。
- 6) 除非在正式的场合,人们很少看见卡尔穿礼服。
- 7) 今晚我们想请几位朋友过来吃饭。
- 8) 明确规定考试时不得使用词典。
- 9) 在那家公司工作的秘书星期六得加班。
- 10) 我们希望能过一个白色的圣诞节。

4. Extra reading

目的是锻炼学生的独立阅读能力。教师宜在课上限时完成,可提出简短的问题让学生口头回答,书中的理解性练习可留给学生自己课后完成。

5. Passage B

是主课文A的补充短文,分别设有阅读理解和句型翻译套写两项练习,其中的重要词汇注释如下:

Passage B的重要词汇注释如下

habit *n.* 习惯

e.g. It is not easy to break off a bad habit.

要改掉一个坏习惯不容易。

risk *v.* 冒险

e.g. He risked his life when he saved the child from the fire.

他冒着生命危险把孩子从火中救出。

slurp *v.* 吸食; 出声地吃喝

e.g. My mother never allows me to slurp.

我的母亲从不允许我吸食。

tip *v.* 付小费 *n.* 小费

e.g. What is a proper way to tip a waitress in your hometown?

在你的家乡该如何恰当地给女招待小费?

I gave a tip to the man who carried these books for me.

我给了那个替我拿书的人一点小费。

unpleasant *a.* 不愉快的

e.g. There has been an unpleasant atmosphere in the office these days.

这些日子办公室的气氛一直令人不快。

Western *a.* 西方的

e.g. We have many tourists from the Western countries.

我们有许多来自西方国家的旅游者。

Westerner *n.* 西方人

e.g. Many Westerners are interested in the eastern culture.

许多西方人对东方文化感兴趣。

6. 本课的Applied Writing 介绍英文宴请函的基本写作格式和结构, 包括1) 活动内容和目的、聚会地点、日期和时间; 2) 开始要有称呼, 如先生、女士、小姐、博士等; 3) 结尾有时附加说明“请答复”和答复地址或电话号码。

7. 本课的Pick Up Your Grammar 复习主动语态与被动语态。教师还可根据学生的实际水平补充少量短句进行口头语法练习。



VI. 练习答案 (Key to Exercises)

Key to Integrated Skills Development

- ① 1. Britain.
2. He works as a technician for a joint venture.
3. Bob Anderson and his wife, Anna.
4. Li Hui.
5. Seven o'clock.
- ② 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. F 6. T 7. F
- ③ 1. change your mind
2. the table and food
3. to come at about 7:15
4. an American custom
5. a very formal occasion
- ⑤ (Open)
- ⑥ 1. had ... over 2. arranged 3. looking forward to
4. occasions 5. particular 6. on time
7. specify 8. thank you more 9. mention
10. invitation
- ⑦ 1. We'd like to have you and your wife over for dinner this Saturday evening.
2. How does 7:00 sound?
3. I'd like to have a few friends over for a dinner party to celebrate my birthday.

4. I'll have to check, but I'm pretty sure it'll be all right.
 5. It's getting late, so I'm afraid I'll have to be leaving.
 6. Thanks again for a lovely evening.
 7. I'll help you for the sake of your sister.
 8. We asked for his permission to use the car.
 9. I'll show you around the campus.
 10. The host expects us to arrive at six.
- 8
1. a. 一旦选择了在这里工作, 你最好不要很快就改变主意。
b. Once you have accepted him as your boyfriend, it is better not to hurt him with bad words.
c. Once you have made a promise, it is better not to break your words.
 2. a. 除非在周末, 一般都可以在实验室待上一整天。
b. Except in special cases, it is all right to ask questions in class.
c. Except at a very formal party, it is all right to wear blue jeans.
- 9
1. T 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. T 6. F 7. F 8. F
- 10
1. Yes 2. No 3. No 4. No 5. No 6. No 7. Yes
- 11
1. a. 当你迷路的时候, 你应该首先找警察帮忙。
b. When you plan to travel to a foreign country, you should first of all get some idea of its culture, history, and geography.
c. When you feel really bored, you should first of all consider activities like swimming, cycling or tennis.
 2. a. 通过写感谢信, 他感谢玛丽对他在英国期间的热情款待。
b. By visiting their parents each weekend, they show how much they care about their parents.
c. By giving John a special gift, they showed him how they valued their friendship.
 3. a. 但是, 很多人觉得讲别人的闲话是令人讨厌的。
b. However, Westerners find talking about other people's privacy impolite.
c. However, all of us find being kept waiting for more than ten minutes unbearable.
 4. a. 说起食品安全, 政府已经制定了新的法律法规。
b. And when it comes to business cards, you should present them with two hands.
c. And when it comes to work, they went to many job interviews but failed to get any job.

Key to Pick Up Your Grammar

1. The children are brought to the park (by their parents) once a week.
2. A lot of money has been spent (by them) on new farming machines.
3. Mobile phones are used to send short messages./Short messages are sent (by them) with mobile phones.
4. Your health may be damaged by too much work.
5. The virus should be killed first and then your computer can be used again.
6. He is always invited by his Chinese friends to spend Mid-Autumn Day with them at home.



VII. 课文参考译文 (Text Translation for Reference)

对话A：“我们很愿意赴约。”

王涛在一家合资企业工作。他的同事鲍勃·安德森是位来自英国的技术员。王涛和他的妻子李卉想请鲍勃·安德森和他的夫人来共进晚餐。下面是他俩的对话。

王涛： 星期六晚上有事吗？

鲍勃： 没什么特殊事儿。干什么？

王涛： 我们想请你和你夫人星期六晚上来共进晚餐。你们能来吗？

鲍勃： 这个星期六晚上？

王涛： 是啊，我们希望你们能和我们一起吃饭。

鲍勃： 谢谢你们的邀请，我们很愿意去。

王涛： 太好了。

鲍勃： 我们什么时间去好？

王涛： 7点怎么样？

鲍勃： 7点可以。我们期待着这一时刻。

对话B：“我们玩得很高兴。”

现在是晚上10点。鲍勃和夫人安娜准备告辞。他们向王涛和他的妻子李卉表示谢意。以下是鲍勃、安娜、王涛和李卉之间的对话。

李卉： 这是你们的外衣。

鲍勃： 谢谢。今晚过得太愉快了。十分感谢你们的邀请。

王涛： 不用客气。能接待你们我们很高兴。

安娜： 噢，我们玩得很高兴。

王涛： 你们能来玩我们很高兴，以后再来呀！

鲍勃： 再次感谢你们，晚安！

李卉： 晚安！开车小心点儿，外面很泥泞。

短文A：在美国接受邀请

你一旦接受了邀请，最好不要轻易改变主意。美国人一般按照他们邀请的客人的数目安排餐桌和饮食。美国人特别重视时间。但是他们并不期望你准点到达。他们更希望你比约定的时间晚到15分钟。比如说他们请你6点到达，主人期望你到达的时间别早于6点，但也别晚于6点15分。

美国人习惯领客人参观一下房间，但是他们不希望你去动所看到的東西。如果要动你感兴趣的东西，得征得主人的同意。

在餐桌上，话题可以很广泛，但是你应当对饮食给予肯定的评价。如果你确实不喜欢

某种食品，你可以说它看上去多么漂亮并询问它是怎么做出来的。

除非在特别正式的场合，你都可以自己动手添加食物。不要每次吃完了都等着别人替你添菜。如果你确实喜欢某种食物，你不要仅仅是为了礼貌而说：“不用了。”

短文 B: 关于请朋友吃饭的有益建议

如果你计划请朋友到西餐馆聚餐，首先要考虑的事儿是预订餐位，也就是说，得提前订好餐桌，不然的话你也许就不得不花很长的时间等待空桌，这对你和客人来说都是一件很难堪的事情。

在就餐时，有些日本人和中国人会习惯地发出“啧啧”的声音，以此向做东的人表示他们非常喜欢这些食物。但是西方人则觉得这样喝汤让人觉得不舒服。此外，他们认为在餐桌上剔牙齿或补妆很不雅观。说到付小费，西方人一般只需把钱留在桌子上。至于钱多钱少由你自己决定，一般是账单的15%到20%。

高等教育出版社

Unit

8

Help Yourself, Please.



I. 教学时间分配 (Time Allocation)

本单元共需4~5学时，对话1学时；课文A及练习2~3学时，课文B、语法等1学时（教师可根据本课内容的难易程度稍作增减）。Extra reading的目的为锻炼学生的独立阅读能力。教师宜在课上限时完成，可提出简短的问题让学生口头回答，书中的理解性练习可留给学生自己课后完成。



II. 教学目的与要求 (Aims and Requirements)

I 内容重点 (Language Focus)

1. 交际重点 (Communicative Focus)

掌握祝酒词以及让菜用语。

2. 重点训练单词和词组 (Focal Words and Expressions)

appetizing, bar, cheer, crispy, dean, fork (knife and fork), go with, help oneself to, juicy, manage, meal, roast, sour, splendid, tasty, tender, to your health, wait for

3. 重点句型和习惯表达法 (Focal Functions and Patterns)

Offering

- 1) What are you going to have, Helen?
- 2) What would you like?
- 3) Would you care for anything to drink?
- 4) Would you like wine or spirits?
- 5) How about having a glass of wine?
- 6) Now let's try the food.
- 7) Will you have another cup of spirits?
- 8) Help yourself to vegetables.
- 9) Have it while it's hot.
- 10) Have some of the sweet and sour fish, please.
- 11) What about some fruit?
- 12) Have an apple, please.

Replying

- 1) I think I'll have a boiled egg.
- 2) I'd like a glass of juice.
- 3) That's a good idea.
- 4) Yes, that's very kind of you.
- 5) Yes, please.
- 6) We can help ourselves.
- 7) No, thank you.
- 8) No, I've had enough.

Toasts

- 1) Here's to your health/success/happiness. Cheers!
- 2) And to yours. Cheers!
- 3) Here's to the friendship between our two countries.
- 4) Let's drink to that. Cheers!

技能要求 (Skills Development)**1 听说 (Listening and Speaking)**

能听懂并用英语进行涉及敬酒及让菜等方面的简短对话。

2 读译 (Reading and Translating)

能阅读有关宴请客人的小短文并进行英汉互译。

3 写 (Applied Writing)

- A. 能使用所学词汇、句型和语法写出祝酒、让菜等方面的简短语句。
- B. 了解英文宴请回函的基本写作格式。



III. 背景资料 (Background Information)

1 饮酒 (Drinking)

Drinking habits vary widely among Americans as they do among people from other lands. Some families never serve any alcoholic drinks, others have them before dinner, wine with the meal, and perhaps drinks after dinner. You are more likely to be offered a cocktail before dinner than wine with the meal. If you are not accustomed to American cocktails, be careful, they are often quite strong. Women as well as men drink them, but you should feel free to ask for something less strong or a non-alcoholic drink if you wish. In some homes, cocktails may be served for an hour or longer before dinner. If you do not wish to have another cocktail, simply say so.

Wine is becoming increasingly popular with Americans but is still not as common as in some other countries and not drunk as much as beer. Do not be surprised if you are offered milk, coffee, tea (iced or hot, depending on the season) or even Coca-Cola with a meal. Water is usually served in restaurants without being ordered, although you may certainly order anything else you prefer to drink.

2 礼物 (Gifts)

Americans give gifts on numerous occasions: on retirement of a colleague at work; at Christmas; on birthdays of good friends and children; at weddings; on the birth of a baby; when someone achieves an honour or graduates and on a farewell visit to a friend. However they exchange these gifts only among good friends. If you know people only casually, it is inappropriate to give gifts.

In most cases, it is suitable to bring one small gift on your farewell visit to each friend. The gift should always be inexpensive and will be especially appreciated if it is made in China. You might bring some lightweight, small items, but gifts should not be a high priority. Gifts are usually given after a relationship has developed—to express appreciation for something that has been done. In general, a gift should not be given before a relationship has developed. Americans often bring a token gift, however, such as flowers, the first time they are invited to someone's home.

When a gift is received in the United States, the receiver is almost always expected to open it in front of the giver and admire it. He should thank the giver and should usually make some comments on the gift's beauty or practicality so that you know it is appreciated.



IV. 语言点 (Language Points)

I 课文补充注释 (Notes to Dialogues and Passage A)

1. Cheers!

干杯!

Cheers!

(敬酒词) 干杯; 祝你健康, 属于非正式用语。类似的句子还有:

Bottoms up!

干杯, 属于非正式且幽默的说法。

To your health! 或者 Here's to your health!

干杯, 祝你健康!

To 2010! 为2010年干杯!

To Mary and John!

为玛丽和约翰干杯。

这些都是敬酒词, 意思是“为…干杯”或“敬…一杯”或“祝愿…”, 其前还可以加Here's。其他还有:

I propose a toast to ...

我提议为…干杯。

Let's drink a toast to ...

让我们举杯祝贺…。

Let's drink (a toast) to our great country.

让我们为伟大的祖国干杯。

I propose a toast to all our friends gathered here tonight.

我提议为今晚到场聚会的所有的朋友干杯!

Ladies and gentlemen, I'd like to propose a toast to the friendship between our two countries.

女士们, 先生们, 我提议为我们两国的友谊干杯!

2. Zhou Hong, Dean of the Department of Foreign Languages ...

周宏是外语系主任, ...

dean可以指“教务处长, 学院院长, 系主任”等。

e.g. Peter is the dean of school of Further Education.

彼得是继续教育学院的院长。

Professor Zhao, our dean, is also in charge of the Department of Foreign Languages.

我们的赵主任也负责外语系。

3. Would you like to use chopsticks or a knife and fork?

您想用筷子还是刀叉?

a knife and fork

一套刀叉

不定冠词a/an常用在表示成对名词的第一个名词之前。

e.g. a cup and saucer 一套杯碟
 a hat and coat 一套衣帽
 a lock and key 一套锁和钥匙

如果与两个不是“自然成对”的词连用，则各个名词前面都要用不定冠词：

e.g. When you go on holiday, take a raincoat and a camera.

你去度假时，要带上雨衣和照相机。

What he needs is a pen and a piece of paper.

他需要的是一支笔和一张纸。

4. I think I'll try chopsticks and see if I can manage them.

我想还是试试用筷子吧，看我会不会用。

比较：try与manage

try 努力，尝试。指多次试图去做某事。多含有虽然失败，但仍想方设法继续争取成功之意。

manage 做成。指努力去做某事，并且取得成功。

e.g. He tried to do the experiment many times, but failed.

他多次做实验，但均未成功。

Although he was very busy, he managed to attend the meeting.

他虽然很忙，但还是设法参加了会议。

5. Have some of the sweet and sour fish, please.

请吃点糖醋鱼。

这是一种较为直接的让菜的说法，常见的说法还有：

Help yourself to ... please.

请吃…

Have some more fish, please.

再吃点儿鱼吧。

e.g. Help yourself to some ice cream, please.

请吃点冰淇淋吧。

Have some more fried chicken, please.

请再吃点儿炸鸡。

6. Will you have another cup of spirits?

再来一杯白酒怎么样？

比较：another, other, the other, others, the others

another由an + other构成，“另一个”，表示泛指另外一个，只修饰单数可数名词；other + 复数名词表示不定的“其他的”人或物；the other指两者中的另外一个；others是泛指另一些别的人或物；the others特指除已说明的人或物之外的其余所有的人或物。

e.g. I don't like the colour of this shirt. Please show me another one.

我不喜欢这件衬衣的颜色，请再给我看一件。

Tom is at home. The other students are at school.

汤姆在家，其余的学生在学校。

Old Wang has two sons. One is in Beijing, the other is in Shanghai.

老王有两个儿子，一个在北京，另一个在上海。

Some like this, others like that.

有的喜欢这个，有的喜欢那个。

The dictionary is better than the others.

这本字典比别的都好。

7. I'm afraid it's a bit too strong for me.

恐怕这酒对我来说度数太高了。

be afraid (that) (礼貌用语，对已发生或可能发生的某事而表示歉意或提出婉转的看法) 恐怕

e.g. I'm afraid (that) I can't go shopping with you.

我恐怕不能和你去购物了。

I'm afraid you made a spelling mistake here.

恐怕你这儿是拼错了。

be afraid of + 名词或者动名词

e.g. Most girls are afraid of dogs.

大多数女孩子怕狗。

Are you afraid of going out alone at night?

你害怕夜晚独自外出吗？

be afraid to + 动词原形 怕，不敢

后接不定式和后接从句意思有些不同。后接不定式是“怕”，“不敢”，后接从句是“恐怕”，“担心”。

e.g. He is afraid to die.

他怕死。

He is afraid (that) she'll die.

他担心她要死了。

“be afraid of + 动名词”可以是 be afraid to 的意思（怕），也可以是 be afraid 接从句的意思（恐怕）。

e.g. He is afraid of making mistakes.

他怕出错。

He was afraid of upsetting her.

他担心她心烦。

Synonym: afraid, fearful, terrible, frightened

afraid 害怕的，恐惧，常作表语，是表语形容词。泛指一种“恐惧的心理”，多指对某一事物经常或一贯惧怕。还可以用来表示委婉的异议或歉意。

e.g. I'm afraid that I'll be late.

我恐怕要迟到了。

He was afraid of hurting her feelings.

他怕伤了她的感情。

fearful 可怕的，害怕的，担心的。既可以表示“引起恐惧的”，又可以表示内心的害怕与忧虑。

e.g. There was a fearful storm last night.

昨夜有过一场可怕的风暴。

The old man was fearful of falling.

老人害怕摔倒。

The doctor was fearful that the patient should get worse.

医生担心病人的情况恶化。

terrible 可怕的，恐怖的。指令人恐怖的，含有痛苦或使人不知所措之意。

e.g. That was a terrible accident.

那起事故太可怕了。

Sometimes they could hear a terrible noise at night.

他们有时在夜晚能听到可怕的声音。

frightened 受惊的，恐惧的。主要是指被某一（突然的）客观事物所惊吓。

e.g. She was frightened by a strange noise outside the window.

她被窗外一个怪声吓了一跳。

The girl was obviously frightened.

那个女孩显然是受惊了。

8. How about having a glass of white wine to go with the fish?

那么来杯白葡萄酒吃鱼吧？

go with 和…一起，相配

e.g. Your new shoes go well with your trousers.

你的新鞋与裤子挺协调。

Her black dress goes with her hair.

她的黑色裙装与她的头发十分相配。

9. Guests came and went but the party continued.

宾客来来往往而聚会照常进行。

come and go 来来往往，作短暂的访问，忽来忽去

e.g. Boats and ships come and go on the river.

河上船只来来往往。

Visitors came and went at the party.

聚会上客人们进进出出。

10. Nobody knew him, but the host went to meet him, and took him to the bar for a drink.

没有人认识他，但是主人还是走上前去迎接他，并把他带到酒吧前喝酒。

take ... to 带…去

e.g. The taxi driver took the guest to the hotel.

出租车司机送客人到宾馆。

This bus will take you to the railway station.

乘这辆公共汽车可以去火车站。

11. ..., but one of your guest's cars was in front of our gate, ...

但是你有一位客人的车停在我们的大门前。

in front of = before, 是“在…前面”的意思, 就是说在…的前方。

e.g. There is a desk in front of the blackboard.

黑板前有一张书桌。

The tree is in front of the house.

房前有棵树。

in the front of 是“在…前部”的意思, 即在一个地方的范围之内。

e.g. The teacher is standing in the front of the classroom.

教师站在教室的前部。

There is a red flag in the front of the boat.

船头有面红旗。

词汇用法 (Word Usage)

appetizing *a.* causing desire, esp. for food 开胃的, 引起食欲的; 美味的

e.g. The sweet and sour fish is very appetizing.

糖醋鱼很爽口。

The Braised Beef smells appetizing.

红烧牛肉闻起来令人垂涎。

bar *n.* (a place with) a counter where alcoholic drinks or food and drinks are sold 酒吧

e.g. He used to go to that bar.

他过去常去那家酒吧。

In Britain people call a bar a pub.

在英国人们称酒吧为酒馆。

cheer *n.* lightness of spirits or mood; gaiety or joy 高兴, 欢乐; a shout of approval, encouragement, or congratulation 喝彩 (表示赞赏、鼓励或祝贺)

v. to make happier or more cheerful 为…加油/欢呼

intr. (cheers) 敬酒语

e.g. He needed a cup of tea to cheer himself up.

他需要一杯茶为自己加油。

The fans cheered the runners on.

热烈的观众们用欢呼声为赛跑选手打气。

He's always full of cheer even in a difficult situation.

他甚至在困境中也总是兴致勃勃。

Let's give three cheers for the visitors.

让我们向来宾三次欢呼。

A good meal brought cheer to our hearts.

一顿美餐使我们心中愉快。

Cheers!

干杯!

crispy = crisp *a.* hard; dry; easily broken; firm and fresh, as if recently made or grown 脆的; 易碎的; 干而硬的; 鲜嫩而爽口的

e.g. The boy likes crispy biscuits.

这个孩子喜欢吃脆饼干。

This kind of apple tastes crispy.

这种苹果吃起来脆生生的。

dean *n.* an administrative officer in charge of a college, faculty, or division in a university 大学的学院院长; 系主任; 部门主任

e.g. He has been promoted to be dean of personnel department.

他已经被提拔成人事处主任。

The dean of Educational Affairs in our college is a learned person.

我校的教务主任是个有学识的人。

fork *n.* an instrument for holding food or carrying it to the mouth, having a handle at one end with two or more points at the other 餐叉, 叉子

e.g. A small fork is used to lift food.

小叉子是用来叉食品的。

When you eat Western meal, you should use a knife and fork.

吃西餐时, 你应该用刀叉。

juicy *a.* having a lot of juice 多汁的

e.g. Do you like juicy peaches?

你喜欢吃水蜜桃吗?

These are fresh and juicy oranges.

这些是新鲜多汁的橘子。

meal *n.* an amount of food eaten at one time 餐, 饭

e.g. She cooks a hot meal in the evening.

晚上她烧一顿热饭。

Breakfast is the first meal of the day.

早餐是一天内的第一顿饭。

roast *v.* to cook or be cooked by dry heat, either over a fire or in a hot box 烤; 烘

e.g. The meat is roasting nicely.

肉烤得正香。

Coffee beans are roasted before they are used to make coffee.

咖啡豆在做成咖啡之前首先要烘干。

sour *a.* having a sharp taste like the taste of an apple that is not ripe yet 酸的, 酸味的

e.g. The grapes were too sour to eat.

这葡萄太酸了, 几乎不能吃。

The milk has turned sour.

牛奶已经酸了。

spirit *n.* (usu. *pl.*) (常用复数) a strong alcoholic drink, such as whisky or brandy, produced by distilling 烈酒 (如威士忌, 白兰地等)

e.g. I prefer spirits to beer.

与啤酒比较, 我更喜欢烈酒。

Do you drink spirits?

你喝白酒吗?

splendid *a.* very fine; excellent 极好的; 上等的; 杰出的

e.g. You've passed the examination. Splendid!

你已经通过了考试。太好了!

Having a house party is a splendid idea.

举办一个家庭聚会是个非常好的主意。

tender *a.* easy to bite through; soft 嫩的; 松软的

e.g. This steak is very tender.

这块牛排非常嫩。

The leaves in spring are green and tender.

春天的树叶翠绿而柔嫩。

Antonym: **tough** *a.* difficult to cut or eat 切(咬)不动的

e.g. This meat is tough.

这肉咬不动。

We don't like tough steak.

我们不喜欢咬不动的牛排。

wait for to stay somewhere without doing anything until somebody or something comes or happens 等待

e.g. Please wait for me in front of the school gate.

请在校门前等我。

We have been waiting for the bus for a long time but it has not come yet.

我们等了好久, 但是公共汽车还是没有来。



V. 练习指导及补充练习 (Guide to Exercises and Supplementary Exercises)

1. Check your understanding 的目的是为检验学生对有关对话及短文的理解，教师应注意引导学生围绕这些练习进行口头或笔头训练。

补充练习如下：

For Dialogue A

Are the following statements true (T) or false (F) according to Dialogue A?

- 1) Zhou Hong and William are at a tea party.
- 2) Professor Abel would like to use a knife and fork.
- 3) William wants to drink a little Maotai.
- 4) Zhou Hong asks William to try some sea food.
- 5) William says the sea-cucumber is very tender and crispy.

答案：

- 1) F 2) F 3) T 4) T 5) F

For Dialogue B

Choose the best answers according to Dialogue B.

- 1) Zhou Hong asks Professor Abel to have some _____.

A. sweet and sour fish	B. roast duck
C. sea-cucumber	D. beancurd
- 2) William doesn't have another cup of spirits because _____.

A. he is afraid of drinking spirits	B. he is drunk (醉了)
C. he finds it too strong	D. he dislikes spirits
- 3) How about having a glass of white wine to go with the fish?
 "White wine" probably means _____ here.

A. spirits	B. beer
C. dry wine	D. sweet wine
- 4) This dish is really wonderful. "Dish" most probably means _____ here.

A. a large flat plate	B. a small cup
C. a beautiful bowl	D. food served in the container
- 5) By "I must say we've had a splendid meal", William means that _____.

A. he enjoyed the food
B. he thinks the dinner party is important
C. he likes the food but doesn't like the spirits
D. he thinks they have spent too much time

答案:

- 1) A 2) C 3) C 4) D 5) A

For Passage A

Answer the following questions briefly according to Passage A.

- 1) Why was there a big party in the house? (Because it was Christmas.)
- 2) Was the small man one of the host's friends? (No, he wasn't.)
- 3) Did anybody at the party know the small man? (No, nobody knew him.)
- 4) The host greeted the stranger and served him with some drink, didn't he? (Yes, he did.)
- 5) How long did the man sit there? (For an hour.)
- 6) Did the man and his wife want to go out? (Yes, they did.)
- 7) Where was his wife? (She was waiting for her husband in the car.)
- 8) Why did the man come to the party? (To find the one who parked the car in front of his gate.)

2. Learn to communicate 的目的是巩固并扩展本课所学“餐桌”用语。要求学生能背诵并能在课上创造更多的语境进行实际交际训练。口语中常见的句子还有:

- 1) What sort of food would you like?
- 2) Do you prefer Chinese or Western food?
- 3) I'd like to try some Chinese/American/Italian/French food.
- 4) What would you like to drink?
- 5) Do you want salad?
- 6) Do you want some dessert?
- 7) Try some of the fish.
- 8) Help yourself to that duck.
- 9) The food is excellent/delicious/a bit too heavy for me.
- 10) Have some more beef.
- 11) No, thanks. I've had enough.
- 12) I'm quite full./I've had quite enough.
- 13) It's crispy and tender.
- 14) Cheers!
- 15) To your pleasant trip home!
- 16) To your great success!
- 17) To your early completion of the project!
- 18) To the 100th anniversary of your university!
- 19) Let's drink to the health of Mr. Smith!
- 20) May I propose a toast to our friendship?

3. Build up your language stock 主要是为了加深对本课词汇的理解及提高学生的应用能力。练习7 (句型套用) 是为学生学习掌握本课重要句型专门补充编写的。这种句型套用练习可引导学生深入理解句子结构及其精妙之处, 并在此基础上模拟套用这些句型, 学习效果十分显著。因此教师要作为重点练习在课上引导学生完成这一练习, 还可要求他们在练习的基础上背诵这些句型。除要求学生认真做好练习外, 教师还可以补充下列有关练习。

补充练习:

(汉译英:)

- 1) 一 海伦, 喝点白酒怎么样? (spirits)
一 白酒对我来说恐怕度数太高了。(be afraid)
- 2) 为我们两国的友谊干杯。(Here's to ...)
- 3) 北京烤鸭真是又嫩又脆。(tender)
- 4) 你的蓝眼镜与你的蓝眼睛很相配。(go with)
- 5) 我想试试用筷子。(try)

(汉译英答案:)

- 1) 一 How/What about having some spirits, Helen?
一 I'm afraid it is a bit too strong for me.
- 2) Here's to the friendship between our two countries.
- 3) Beijing Roast Duck is very tender and crispy.
- 4) Your blue glasses go very well with your blue eyes.
- 5) I'd like to try to use chopsticks.

(英译汉:)

- 1) When I was young I would listen to the radio, waiting for my favorite songs.
- 2) The bus stop is in front of the park.
- 3) The road continued for ten miles.
- 4) John manages the big company well.
- 5) That restaurant serves delicious food.

(英译汉答案:)

- 1) 我年轻的时候, 常常打开收音机等着收听那些我最喜欢的歌曲。
- 2) 公共汽车站在公园前。
- 3) 这条路绵延10英里。
- 4) 约翰把这家大公司管理得井井有条。
- 5) 那家饭店的饭菜很好吃。

4. Extra reading 的目的是锻炼学生的独立阅读能力。教师宜在课上限时完成，可提出简短的问题让学生口头回答，书中的理解性练习可留给学生自己课后完成。

5. Passage B 为主课文A的补充短文，分别设有阅读理解和句型翻译套写两项练习，其中的重要词汇注释如下：

Passage B的重要词汇注释如下

aroma *n.* 浓香

e.g. The girl's room conveyed a special aroma.
这个女孩儿的房间散发出一股特殊的香味。

brief *a.* 简要的 *n.* 摘要

e.g. To be brief (with you), we can't accept such harsh terms.
简言之，我们不能接受这样苛刻的条件。
Let me give you a brief of the incident.
让我向你们简短地陈述一下这个事件。

create *v.* 产生；创造

e.g. We've created a beautiful new house from an old ruin.
我们把一个旧废墟创建成一栋美丽的新房子。

cuisine *n.* 烹饪法；烹调风格

e.g. Different countries have different cuisines to attract tourists.
不同的国家有不同的烹调风格来吸引旅游者。

delightful *a.* 令人愉快的

e.g. We had a delightful time by the seashore last Sunday.
上星期天我们在海滨玩得真痛快。

develop *v.* 发展

e.g. He is developing into a popular singer.
他在成长为一名受欢迎的歌手。

emphasis *n.* 强调

e.g. Honesty was the emphasis of his speech.
诚实是他讲话的重点。

glorious *a.* 光荣的

e.g. Our country has a glorious past.
我们的国家有光辉的历史。

harmony *n.* 协调

e.g. My neighbours live in perfect harmony.
我的邻居们相处得十分融洽。

mental *a.* 脑力的；心智的

e.g. Several mental patients have recovered with his help.

在他的帮助下，不少精神病患者康复了。

physical *a.* 实际的；身体的；肉体的

e.g. Our physical environment has been greatly improved.

我们的实际环境得到了很大的改善。

Physical fitness means having a strong healthy body.

身体健康就是有一个强壮健康的身体。

slice *v.* 切成薄片 *n.* 薄片

e.g. I sliced the bread.

我把面包切成片。

Do you want one more slice of meat?

你要不要再加一片肉？

sophisticated *a.* 复杂的

e.g. The expert devotes all his passion to the sophisticated technology.

这位专家将全部的热情投入到这项复杂的技术中。

timing *n.* 把握时间（火候）；计时

e.g. The timing of our statement is very appropriate.

我们发表声明选择的时机很恰当。

treat *v.* 款待；对待

e.g. He treats his guests with courtesy.

他殷勤地招待他的客人。

Glass must be treated carefully.

使用玻璃必须小心谨慎。

She treats me like one of the family.

她待我像家人一样。

world-famous *a.* 举世闻名的

e.g. The old man is a world-famous linguist.

这位老人是一个举世闻名的语言学家。

6. 本课的Applied Writing 为接受邀请的回复函和婉言谢绝的辞谢函。教师应向学生们特别强调婉言谢绝回复函的写作特点，例如需要陈述不能接受邀请的原因并再一次诚恳地表达谢意等。

7. 本课的Pick Up Your Grammar 为复习复合宾语，可参见《英语拓展教程2》语法附录I-6。教师还可根据学生的实际水平补充少量短句进行口头语法练习。

2. happiness, harmony, mental and physical well-being
 3. invite foreign friends to dinner
 4. perfect combination of “color, aroma, taste and appearance”
 5. the seasonings, slicing techniques, the perfect timing of cooking and the art of laying out the food on the plate
 6. the Cantonese cuisine, the Shandong cuisine, the Huai-Yang cuisine and the Sichuan cuisine
 7. a very sophisticated art
 8. treat their foreign guests with Chinese food
- 10
1. a. 如果想向外国朋友表示我们热情好客, 你最好安排晚宴招待他们。
b. If you want to show your willingness to cooperate, you'd better go to the company in person.
c. If you have creative ideas about improving efficiency, you'd better make constructive suggestions.
 2. a. 这个地区因其丰富的自然资源和广袤的土地而世界闻名。
b. Einstein is world-famous for his Theory of Relativity.
c. Our city is world-famous for its old buildings.
 3. a. 现在, 汽车制造业已经发展成为非常赚钱的行业。
b. Nowadays, table tennis has developed into an Olympic game.
c. Nowadays, Chinese calligraphy has developed into a precious traditional art.
 4. a. 这就是为什么有些中国家长事事都宁愿为孩子做的原因之一。
b. That perhaps is one of the reasons why American kids are more independent than Chinese kids.
c. This is one of the reasons why college students like playing Internet games.

Key to Pick Up Your Grammar

1. They have got the food ready/prepared for the picnic.
2. The passenger is not allowed to take so much luggage with him.
3. We must keep the reading room quiet.
4. He is called a walking dictionary by the students.
5. Could you ask her to go with us?
6. The teacher is teaching the children to make model planes.



VII. 课文参考译文 (Text Translation for Reference)

对话 A: “干杯!”

周宏是外语系主任，威廉·安贝尔是来自英国的教授。他们正在出席晚宴。

- 周宏： 您喜欢用筷子还是刀叉？
 威廉： 我想还是试试用筷子吧，看我会不会用。
 周宏： 好的。您来点葡萄酒还是白酒？
 威廉： 我想喝点著名的中国茅台酒。
 周宏： 祝您健康，干杯！
 威廉： 也祝您健康，干杯！
 周宏： 来吃点菜吧。这是海参。
 威廉： 真鲜美啊！
 周宏： 请吃点鸭子，香酥鸭。趁热吃。
 威廉： 真是又嫩又脆。

对话 B: “来点水果怎么样?”

周宏和安贝尔教授在就餐时继续他们的谈话。

- 周宏： 请吃点糖醋鱼。
 威廉： 这鱼真开胃，味道好极了。
 周宏： 再来一杯白酒怎么样？
 威廉： 不，谢谢。恐怕这酒对我来说度数太高了。
 周宏： 那么来杯白葡萄酒吃鱼吧？
 威廉： 好主意。这道菜实在是太好了。
 周宏： 来点水果怎么样？请吃个苹果吧。
 威廉： 这苹果汁儿真多。我得说这顿饭吃得太开心了。

短文 A: 美国人怎样在家中接待客人?

圣诞节到了，家里举办了一个大聚会。宾客来来往往而聚会照常进行。这时门铃响了，几个人同时喊到：“请进！”。一个矮个男子打开门走了进来。没有人认识他，但是主人还是走上前去迎接他，并把他带到酒吧前喝酒。

这个人高高兴兴地坐着喝了一个小时的酒。然后他突然停了下来抬头看着主人。“你知道吗，”他说，“没有人邀请我来参加这个晚会。我不认识你，也不认识你的夫人及你的客人。我和妻子想开车出去，但是你有一位客人的车停在我们的大门前，所以我来找他。我妻子还坐在车里等着我回去呢。”

短文 B: 中国文化中的饮食

饮食是中国文化一个至关重要的组成部分。美食佳肴可以营造出欢乐、和谐及身心的安康。所以，如果你邀请外国朋友聚餐，最好先给他们简短地介绍一下中国菜肴。

中国烹调的历史源远流长，以其“色、香、味、观”融为一体而闻名于世。中国烹饪强调调味、刀功、火候，以及上盘装点等技艺。中国烹饪中最为著名的一些菜系有南方的粤菜，北方的鲁菜，东部的淮扬菜和西部的川菜。时下，中国烹饪已经发展成为一门精巧的艺术。这也许就是中国人时常用中国菜肴款待外国客人的一个原因。



高等教育出版社

Unit

9

An Invitation Card



I. 教学时间分配 (Time Allocation)

本单元共需4~5学时，对话1学时；课文A及练习2~3学时，课文B、语法等1学时（教师可根据本课内容的难易程度稍作增减）。Extra reading的目的为锻炼学生的独立阅读能力。教师宜在课上限时完成，可提出简短的问题让学生口头回答，书中的理解性练习可留给学生自己课后完成。



II. 教学目的与要求 (Aims and Requirements)

I 内容重点 (Language Focus)

1. 交际重点 (Communicative Focus)

了解欧美人的饮食习惯及餐桌礼仪，如何邀请友人或接受邀请到餐馆就餐。

2. 重点训练单词和词组 (Focal Words and Expressions)

celebrate, experience, Italian, mean, plain, publish, share, treat, uncomfortable, come over, be not much of a, take out to eat, pick up, return from, share with, visit with, hear of, get back from

3. 重点句型和习惯表达法 (Focal Functions and Patterns)

Inviting people

- 1) We are having an informal dinner at our home on Saturday, May 21st, at 6 p.m. and would love you to join us.
- 2) Since you knew the Taylors before they left Boulder, we thought you might enjoy visiting with them again.
- 3) We hope it will be possible for you to be with us.
- 4) We will have an informal dinner party at our home next Sunday, the 26th, and we would be happy if you could come.
- 5) Please phone to let me know if you can come.
- 6) We hope you can join us.
- 7) We are looking forward to your joining us.

Accepting an invitation

- 1) Thank you so much for inviting us to dinner on the 21st. Carl and I will be there by 6 p.m.
- 2) Of course, the answer will have to be yes.
- 3) It's really very kind of you to include me in your party.
- 4) I'll be happy to be at your party on Saturday, November 12th, at 7:00 p.m.
- 5) It is very kind of you to invite me to stay with you on your farm this weekend.
- 6) So this will be a real treat.
- 7) Thank you for including us.

Declining an invitation

- 1) I greatly regret that I'm unable to join you next Tuesday.
- 2) I simply can't make it.
- 3) I'm really sorry I couldn't get there. I hope you understand.

技能要求 (Skills Development)

1 听说 (Listening and Speaking)

能听懂并用英语交流怎样邀请友人外出就餐。

2 读译 (Reading and Translating)

能读懂和翻译有关邀请外出就餐及邀请函的短文。

3 写 (Applied Writing)

能模拟套写简短的英文邀请函及其复函。



III. 背景资料 (Background Information)

Eating out—Who pays?

If you've agreed to go out to eat with someone, you should be clear who's paying. If the other person suggests you have lunch with him or her you might simply say something like this: "I'm afraid it'll have to be someplace inexpensive as I have very little money." The other person may say: "OK, I'll meet you at McDonald." This means that you've agreed that each person pays for his own meal, i.e., that you "go Dutch." If the person says "Oh, no, I want to take you to lunch in a little restaurant I like very much," it means that the person intends to pay the bill for both of you. If a person invites you to his or her home for a meal, it's understood that that person is paying; if you invite someone to your home, it's understood that you are buying the food. If you want to invite someone out for lunch, you must also make yourself clear by saying, perhaps, "I'd like to take you to lunch tomorrow at the Hostess Inn Coffee Shop," (meaning you plan to buy the food) or "Let's have lunch together tomorrow at Burger King. It's on me." American women used to expect men to pay all meals, but today most women will pay for themselves. However, you should always make your position clear. Being clear is the polite thing to do; it is lack of clarity that causes loss of face in this situation.



IV. 语言点 (Language Points)

□ 课文补充注释 (Notes to Dialogues and Passage A)

1. Wang Hong is studying for her Ph.D. in America.

王红在美国攻读博士学位。

Ph.D.—Doctor of Philosophy 博士。请注意：Ph.D. 虽然来自 Doctor of Philosophy，但却不是“哲学博士”，而是“博士”的统称，如“心理学博士”为 Ph.D. in psychology。“哲学博士”应是 Ph.D. in philosophy。Ph.D. 也简称为 Doctor。

e.g. Doctor of Science	理学博士
Doctor of Letters	文学博士
Doctor of Law	法学博士

2. She is working in the same lab with her friend Carl Cooper.

她和卡尔·库柏在同一个实验室工作。

lab是laboratory的简略形式。常见的简略形式还有：

auto — automobile	汽车
kilo — kilogram	公斤
photo — photograph	照片
pub — public house	酒吧
fridge — refrigerator	电冰箱
bike — bicycle	自行车
phone — telephone	电话
plane — airplane	飞机
maths — mathematics	数学
mike — microphone	话筒
exam — examination	考试
taxi — taxicab	出租车

3. I hear you just had a paper published.

听说你刚发表了一篇论文。

1) to have sth done 让人或安排人做某事。这里publish指是由出版社完成的。

e.g. Something has gone wrong with my VCD. I'm going to have it repaired this afternoon.

我的VCD坏了，下午我得让人修修。

He had a hair cut.

他理了个发。

2) to have sb do sth 让某人做某事

e.g. I had John find me a job.

我让约翰帮我找了一个工作。

Have Mr. Smith come in now, please.

请你让史密斯先生进来。

3) to have sb doing 让，允许

e.g. The man had the children laughing all the time.

那人让孩子们笑个不停。

I can't have you running up and down all day long.

我不能让你们整天上下乱跑。

4. I'd like to take you out tomorrow evening to dinner to celebrate.

我想庆祝一下，明天晚上请你吃饭。

比较：

I'd like to = I would like to

You'd better = You had better

e.g. I'd like to have a cup of white wine.

我想喝一杯白葡萄酒。

You'd better stay in bed and have a good rest.
你最好卧床休息。

5. My country is a place where people from all over the world come to live, ...

我们国家的人来自世界各地。

6. An expensive place would make me uncomfortable.

高档的地方让我觉得不舒服。

to make + sth/sb + *adj.* 致使/使成为...

e.g. Jack's answer made his teacher glad.

杰克的回答使老师很高兴。

The wrong decision made the staff very angry.

这项错误的决定使全体职工很生气。

7. I will pick you up at your office about 5. OK?

我5点左右开车到你办公室来接你，好吗？

pick sth/sb up 取物，开车接人

e.g. I'll go back to my dormitory to pick up my bag.

我回宿舍去拿包。

Wait for me at the school gate and I'll pick you up there.

在校门口等我，我开车去接你。

8. As you know, Prof. and Mrs. Harvey Taylor have just returned from China, and they will be sharing some of their experiences with us then.

您知道，哈维·泰勒教授和太太刚从中国回来，我们将一起分享他们的经历。

as you know = and you know this, 可用作插入语，也可解释为由as引导的定语从句。可译作：你是知道的；如你所知。

e.g. IBM, as you know, is a very famous company in the world.

你是知道的，IBM公司是一家世界著名的公司。

As you know, the Great Wall of China is one of the greatest wonders in the world.

如你所知，中国的长城是世界上最伟大的奇迹之一。

9. My husband and I have heard of your work of finding host families for international students at the universities, and would like to get to know you better.

我丈夫和我已经听说你们在为（博尔德市）各大学的留学生寻找寄宿家庭，所以我们希望更多地了解你们。

1) 注意人称代词的使用顺序：

人称代词的排列顺序一般为：2-3-1，即第二人称，第三人称，第一人称；人称代词和名词的排列顺序一般为：名词，人称代词。但you位于名词前。

e.g. You, he and I are students.

我、你、他是学生。

The doctor and she are having a talk.

医生与她在交谈。

- 2) host family (寄宿家庭) is a family with which an overseas student can stay with.
3) experience 一词用作复数时作“经历”解。

10. We haven't had a chance to talk with the Taylors since they got back from China, so this will be a real treat.

自从哈维·泰勒夫妇从中国回来之后，我们还没有机会同他们交谈过，所以这次真是个难得的机会。

- 1) to have a chance to do sth 有机会做某事

e.g. Do you have a chance to visit Paris next year?

你明年有机会访问巴黎吗?

She had a chance to work as a secretary in a joint venture.

她曾有机会在一家合资企业做秘书工作。

- 2) a real treat 真是难得的好机会

Treat is something that gives pleasure, joy or delight, esp. when unexpected. 意外的惊喜，意想不到的难得的乐事

e.g. Your visit to us is a great treat.

你来看我们真是难得的好事。

He bought his daughter a notebook computer as a birthday treat.

他给女儿买了一个笔记本电脑作为难得的生日礼物。

II 词汇用法 (Word Usage)

celebrate *v.* to enjoy oneself on a special occasion 庆祝

e.g. We celebrated his birthday with a party.

我们举行了聚会来庆祝他的生日。

We celebrated the New Year with a musical evening.

我们举办了音乐晚会庆祝新年。

experience *v.* to participate in personally; undergo 亲身参与; 体验; 经历

n. the apprehension of an object, a thought, or an emotion through the senses or mind; the knowledge or skill derived from doing sth 体验; 经验 (不可数名词); 经历 (可数名词)

e.g. We may take this chance to experience life in the countryside.

我们可利用这个机会体验一下乡村生活。

Please tell us your experiences in the woods.

请你给我们讲一讲你在森林里的经历吧。

He has much experience in cooking.

他有丰富的烹饪经验。

It is my first experience of teaching.

这是我的初次教学体验。

hey *int.* a shout used to call attention or to express surprise, interest, etc. 嗨（招呼或表示惊奇、兴趣等）

e.g. Hey! Where are you going?

嗨！你上哪儿去呀？

Hey! Look, what I have found here!

嗨！你瞧我找到什么啦！

Italian *a. & n.* of Italy, its culture, language or people 意大利的；意大利语（的）；意大利人（的）

e.g. Rome is an Italian city.

罗马是一个意大利城市。

Marco Polo was a well-known Italian traveler.

马可·波罗是著名的意大利旅行家。

He is learning Italian now.

他现在在学意大利语。

mean *v.* to present (a meaning) 意思是；有…的意思

e.g. What does this French word mean?

这个法文词是什么意思？

The sign means that cars cannot enter.

这个指示牌表示汽车不能入内。

plain *a.* simple; without decoration or patterns 简单的；朴素的，单纯的

e.g. Mother likes plain clothes and plain food.

母亲喜欢穿素装，喜欢吃清淡的食物。

The girl wore a plain brown dress.

这女孩穿了一件棕色无花连衣裙。

publish *v.* (of a business firm) to choose, print, and offer for sale to the public (a book, magazine, etc.) 出版，发行

e.g. The boy wrote a short story that he hoped to publish in a magazine.

这个男孩写了个短篇故事，希望能在杂志上发表。

Did you have your paper published?

你的论文发表了吗？

share *n.* a part or portion belonging to a person or group 一份；股份

v. to divide and parcel out in shares; to participate in, use, enjoy, or experience jointly with another or others 分配；分派；参与；共享

e.g. They share their joys and sorrows all their lifetime.

他们一生同甘共苦。

We shared the work equally between us.

我们两人把工作平分分了。

They gave each of the ten members an equal share.

他们给了这十位成员每人均等的一份。

I'd like you to share my happiness.

我想让你分享我的幸福。

treat *n.* something that gives pleasure, esp. when unexpected 款待; 招待; 意外的乐事

e.g. It's a great treat for her to go to London.

能去伦敦, 对她来说是一件大好事。

This is my treat.

这次由我请客。

uncomfortable *a.* not comfortable 不舒服的; 不自在的

e.g. I feel uncomfortable when John and Jane started arguing with each other.

当约翰和珍妮争论起来时, 我感到很不自在。

This is an uncomfortable chair.

这把椅子坐起来不舒服。

come over to come from a distance; to make a short informal visit 到来, 过来; 顺便来访

e.g. When did you first come over to China?

你第一次来中国是什么时候?

Come over to us when you're free.

有空来玩吧。

not much of a not good at 不太好的

e.g. I'm not much of a swimmer myself.

我游泳不怎么行。

My husband is not much of a cook himself.

我丈夫不太会做饭。

return from to come or go back from ... 从...归来

e.g. What time does your son return from school?

你儿子什么时候放学回家?

When these overseas students returned from abroad, they were warmly welcomed.

留学生回国时受到了热烈欢迎。

share ... with to use, pay, have, etc. with others 分享, 共享

e.g. Tom shared his cake with two of his friends.

汤姆和他的两个朋友分吃了他的蛋糕。

Who do you share the flat with?

你和谁同住一套公寓?

visit with (AmE) to talk socially with 与...闲聊, 聊天

e.g. Do you enjoy visiting with an old man?

你喜欢和老人聊天吗?

Come and talk with us for a few minutes.

过来聊一会吧。

hear of to know of (a fact/the existence of something or somebody) 听说, 得知

e.g. — Who's he?

— I've never heard of him.

— 他是谁?

— 我从来没听说过他。

Have you heard of the bad accident on the motorway yesterday?

你是否已经听说了昨天发生在公路上的恶性车祸?

get back from return, esp. to one's home 从...归来

e.g. The Taylors have just got back from Hong Kong.

泰勒夫妇刚从香港回来。

When will the football team get back from England?

足球队何时从英国回来?



V. 练习指导及补充练习 (Guide to Exercises and Supplementary Exercises)

1. Check your understanding 的目的是为了检验学生对有关对话及短文的理解, 教师可围绕这些语言材料进行口头或笔头训练, 尤其注意开展口头训练。

补充练习如下:

For Dialogue A

Are the following statements true (T) or false (F) according to Dialogue A?

- 1) Wang Hong is studying for her Ph.D. in England.
- 2) Carl Cooper is Wang Hong's colleague.
- 3) Wang Hong has just bought a book.
- 4) Carl wanted to invite her to a party to celebrate.
- 5) Wang Hong is good at cooking, but Carl is not.

答案:

- 1) F 2) T 3) F 4) F 5) T

For Dialogue B

Answer the following questions briefly according to Dialogue B.

- 1) Is America a country with people of different nationalities?
(Yes, it's made up of people from all over the world.)
- 2) What does "any kind of food" mean?
(It means you can get any kind of food you name.)
- 3) What kind of place will Cooper and Wang go to have dinner?
(An inexpensive restaurant.)
- 4) Why are they going to choose a cheap place?

(Because an expensive place would make Wang Hong feel uncomfortable.)

5) What kind of food are they going to eat?

(Some plain old-fashioned American cooking.)

For Passage A

Choose the best answers according to Passage A.

- 1) The invitation is made by _____.
 A. Susan and David McGuthrie B. Linda Olson and her husband
 C. Susan and Linda D. Linda and David
- 2) The McGuthries are going to have an informal dinner _____.
 A. at home B. in a hotel
 C. in an inn D. in a bar
- 3) The informal dinner is to be given _____.
 A. On Sunday, May 21st, at 6 p.m. B. On Saturday, May 21st, at 6 p.m.
 C. On Saturday, May 20th, at 6 a.m. D. On Sunday, May 20th, at 6 a.m.
- 4) According to the passage, _____ will also be present at the dinner party.
 A. some overseas students B. Susan's brother and sister
 C. Prof. Harvey Taylor D. the Taylors
- 5) According to the passage, _____ are working for a host family program for the overseas students.
 A. the Taylors B. the McGuthries
 C. the Olsons D. the Coopers

答案:

- 1) A 2) A 3) B 4) D 5) C

2. Learn to communicate 目的为巩固并扩展本课所学的有关邀请函及复函的用语。教师应要求学生背诵并能运用这些词语写出邀请函及复函。

3. Build up your language stock 主要是为了加深对本课词汇的理解及提高学生的应用能力，教师可以补充类似的练习。其中练习9（句型套用）是为学生学习掌握本课重要句型专门补充编写的。这种句型套用练习可引导学生深入理解句子结构及其精妙之处，并在此基础上模拟套用这些句型，学习效果十分显著。因此教师要作为重点在课上引导学生完成这一练习，还可要求他们在练习的基础上背诵这些句型。

4. Extra reading 的目的为锻炼学生的独立阅读能力。教师宜在课上限时完成，可提出简短的问题让学生口头回答。书中的理解性练习可留给学生自己课后完成。

5. Passage B 为主课文A的补充短文，分别设有阅读理解和句型翻译套写两项练习，其中的重要词汇注释如下：

Passage B的重要词汇注释如下

capsize *v.* (船) 倾覆

e.g. The little boat capsized in the storm, but luckily didn't sink.
小船在暴风雨中倾覆，幸好没沉没。

debone *v.* 剔骨

e.g. The chef skillfully deboned the roast duck.
主厨熟练地给烤鸭剔了骨。

deem *v.* 认为

e.g. He deemed it his duty to help.
他认为助人是他的责任。

direct *a. & ad.* 直接的(地)

e.g. The spokesman never gave a direct answer to any question of the reporters.
发言人对记者提出的问题从来不直接回答。
Come direct to me if you need any help.
有困难直接来找我。

ensue *v.* 接着发生

e.g. What will ensue from/on these actions?
这样的行动会产生什么结果呢?

impolite *a.* 无礼的

e.g. It's really impolite for you not to greet him.
你没跟他打招呼，这很失礼。

insult *v. & n.* 侮辱

e.g. He shouldn't have insulted her by calling her a stupid student.
他不该叫她笨学生来侮辱她。
The crude boss shouted insults at the employees.
那个粗鲁的老板辱骂了雇员。

manners *n.* 行为举止；礼貌

e.g. We should have good manners all the time.
我们在任何时候都应该有礼貌。

outward *a. & ad.* 向外的(地)

e.g. He concerns with outward beauty rather than with inward beauty.
他只注重外表美而忽视内在思想品德。
Face the teapot spout outward.
让壶嘴朝外。

perform *v.* 履行；表演；运行

e.g. The dancer performed beautifully.

这个舞蹈家表演得好极了。

The children performed an English play.

孩子们演了一出英语剧。

senior *a.* 级别较高的

e.g. She teaches English to a senior class.

她教一个高年级班的英语。

separation *n.* 分离

e.g. They were so happy to see each other after such a long separation.

久别重逢，他们非常高兴。

signal *v.* 示意

e.g. The policeman signaled the driver to proceed.

警察打信号让那个司机通过。

skeleton *n.* 骨骼

e.g. He was worn to a skeleton at that time.

他当时骨瘦如柴。

skeleton in the cupboard/the family closet

家丑，见不得人的事

stick *v.* 竖立；粘住

e.g. Never stick your chopsticks upright in the rice bowl.

别把筷子竖插在饭碗里。

Let's stick a hook on the wall.

让我们把钩子钉在墙上。

superstitiously *ad.* 迷信地

e.g. That deed was only superstitiously believed to be decisive.

那件事只是被迷信地认作具有决定意义。

tap *v.* 轻打

e.g. She tapped me on the shoulder to get my attention.

她轻拍我的肩膀以引起我的注意。

turn *v.* 旋转；改变 *n.* 轮流

e.g. Autumn turns the green leaves golden.

秋天使绿叶变成了金黄色。

Please turn to page 361.

请翻到361页。

It is your turn now.

现在轮到你了。

upright *a.* 直立的

e.g. Put the blackboard upright, please.

请把黑板放直。

waiter *n.* 侍者；餐厅招待

e.g. He works as a waiter in the pub.

他在酒吧当招待。

6. 本课的Applied Writing 为练习套写英文的邀请函、接受邀请的回复函和婉言谢绝的辞谢函。学生应记住常用的邀请函、接受邀请的回复函词语, 包括其比较固定的语言格式和专门用语。现补充说明英语信函的写作要点:

英文邀请函与一般书信的写法大致相同, 内文由6个部分组成: 1) 信头 (Heading), 含写信日期; 2) 收信人函内地址 (Inside Address); 3) 称呼 (Salutation); 4) 正文 (Body); 5) 结尾敬语 (Complimentary Closure); 6) 署名 (Signature)。

2) 收信人函内地址	1) 信头 日期
3) 称呼 4) 正文	
	5) 结尾敬语 6) 署名

1) 信头(Heading)

“信头”指写信人的地址。信头位于信笺的右上方或正中。顺序是先写地址, 后写日期。写地址是从小到大, 即先写门牌号和街道号, 再写区名、城市名、省名、国名, 最后一行写日期。日期一般的写法是月-日-年或日-月-年, 第一种写法在“日”后加逗号, 而第二种写法则不用逗号。如:

May 2, 2010或 2 May 2010。

在非正式邀请函中, 写信人的地址可以省略, 但必须写日期。

2) 收信人函内地址 (Inside Address)

“收信人函内地址”即收信人的姓名和地址, 函内地址写在信笺的左方, 在称呼语的上方, 比发信日期低一行, 其内容和格式与信封上收信人的姓名和地址完全相同。顺序是先写收信人姓名和职务, 最后写地址。

如果是亲友之间, 则可以省略不写函内地址, 公务信件则必须写。故本课中的邀请函无此部分。

3) 称呼 (Salutation)

“称呼”是对收信人的称谓语。位于函内地址之下。从左边顶格写, 占一行。知道姓名时用 Dear Mr./Mrs./Miss/Ms. ...; 对不知姓名的公务收信人, 常用 Dear Sirs 或 Dear Sir or Madam。美国人常用 Gentlemen。

4) 正文 (Body)

“正文”是书信的主体部分。写作时应该做到简洁、清楚、明了。若内容简单, 可写成一段, 若内容较多, 可分段来写。

5) 结尾敬语 (Complimentary Closure)

“结尾敬语”位于正文下方2-3行, 从信笺中央偏右的地方写起。类似于汉语书信“此致/敬礼”“谨上”等等。英文常用的结尾敬语有: Yours sincerely/Sincerely yours, 或者 Yours faithfully/Faithfully yours。前者用于“称呼”为具体人名时, 后者用于 Dear Sirs 等不清楚姓氏的场合。美国

人也常用Truly。对上级、老师或年长者，还可用Yours respectfully。结尾敬语的第一个字母应大写，结尾需用逗号。

6) 署名 (Signature)

“署名”位于结尾敬语的下面一行。对不太熟悉的人，最好签全名。除使用打字签名外，必须有亲笔签名。签名后跟职务或头衔。

e.g. Yours faithfully,

Carl Cooper (手写签名)

Carl Cooper (打字或印刷体签名)

Director, Sales Department (职务, 部门)

示例:

Informal Letter of Invitation 邀请信 (非正式)

April 3, 2010

Dear Maria,

I'm having an informal dinner on Wednesday, April 11 at 6 p.m., and would love to have you join us. I hope you will let me know that you can come.

Yours,
Justin
Justin

亲爱的玛丽亚:

4月11日 (星期三) 下午6点我在家中举办非正式的晚宴, 希望你能参加。希望能告知我你能来。

贾思廷
2010年4月3日

Informal Letter of Accepting an Invitation 应邀的复信 (非正式)

April 5, 2010

Dear Justin,

Thank you for your kind invitation to the dinner you are giving on April 11. I shall be very happy indeed to come, and look forward with pleasure to meeting you.

Yours sincerely,
Maria
Maria

亲爱的贾思廷:

感谢你邀请我参加4月11日的晚宴。我将很高兴出席,并愉快地期待着能见到你。

玛丽亚

2010年4月5日

Informal Letter of Declining an Invitation 拒绝的回信(非正式)

April 5, 2010

Dear Justin,

I'm so sorry that I cannot come to the dinner you are giving on April 11 because of a previous engagement that evening.

I do appreciate your asking me and hope that I will have the chance to meet you on some other occasions in the near future.

Yours sincerely,

Maria

Maria

亲爱的贾思廷,

很抱歉我不能参加你4月11日举办的晚宴,因为那天晚上我恰巧有约在先。

但我非常感激你邀请我,我希望在不久的将来有机会能见到你。

玛丽亚

2010年4月5日

7. 本课的Pick Up Your Grammar

为复习1) 双宾语,可参见《英语拓展教程2》语法附录1-5; 2) 名词短语作度量状语。教师还可根据学生的实际水平补充少量短句进行口头语法练习。



VI. 练习答案 (Key to Exercises)

Key to Integrated Skills Development

1. America.
 2. She is studying for her Ph.D.
 3. Carl Cooper.
 4. Because Wang Hong has had a paper published.
 5. She treated him with a Chinese dinner.
 6. No, he isn't.
2. 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. F 6. F
3. 1. At home.
 2. On Saturday, May 21, at 6 p.m.
 3. Prof. and Mrs. Harvey Taylor.
 4. They will talk about their experiences in China.
 5. Before the Taylors left Boulder.
 6. They are finding host families for them.
 7. May 2, 2010.
 8. Five days later, on May 7.
 9. By/At about 6 o'clock.
 10. No, they haven't.
- 5 (Open)
6. 1. j 2. h 3. g 4. a 5. c
 6. i 7. e 8. f 9. b 10. d
7. 1. having an informal dinner; have you join; has ... returned from; sharing ... with; visiting with; it will be possible
 2. Thank you so much for; by six; had a chance; this will be a real treat; including
8. 1. It's a great treat for her to go to the ballet.
 2. Mr. Smith and his wife have just returned from America.
 3. Thank you so much for inviting us to dinner.
 4. Thank you for your interest in our program.
 5. I never miss a chance to play football.
 6. They will share their experiences in China with us.
 7. Can you finish the work before tomorrow?
9. 1. a. 你知道, 孔教授刚从北京回来, 他届时将与我们交流他的一些经历。
 b. As you know, I have just heard the news from the manager, and I will be sharing it with

- you then.
- c. As you know, the overseas student has just returned from her motherland, and she will be sharing her happiness with us then.
2. a. 非常感谢你请我周末到贵府作客。
 - b. Thank you very much for inviting us to your birthday party the day after tomorrow.
 - c. Thank you again for asking me to the interview today.

10

亲爱的布莱克先生：

很遗憾我不能参加下星期二我们俱乐部的活动。碰巧就在那天，我要参加一个非常重要的销售会议。世界各地的许多商人都来参加这次会议。我只是不想失去这么好的一次机会。希望你能理解。尽管如此，还是感谢你热心的邀请。

严萍

11

1. the chopsticks upright in the rice bowl
2. the spout of the teapot to someone at the dinner table
3. on the bowl with the chopsticks
4. to turn a fish over and debone it by yourself

12

1. a. 为了使我们的城市在出口丝绸品方面更有竞争力，还必须采取一些有效措施。
- b. There are some other factors you should consider to make your speech more convincing.
- c. There are some working principles we should follow to make our company more efficient.
2. a. 印名片一定要一面用汉语，另一面用英语。
- b. Make sure you express thanks when receiving gifts.
- c. Make sure you wear suits and ties on formal occasions.
3. a. 在中国大部分地方，适当的做法是在你抽烟之前向其他人敬烟。
- b. The proper way in most Chinese homes is to take off your shoes before entering a house.
- c. The proper way is to introduce the young to the old.
4. a. 不要在公共场合吐痰，因为那样被认为没有教养的。
- b. Don't be late for business meetings, since that will be deemed impolite to the other participants.
- c. Don't ask many questions about salaries in a job interview, since that will be deemed inappropriate.

Key to Applied Writing

① (宴会邀请函)

September 1, 2010

Dear Mr. Forster,

On Friday, September 10, all the faculty members of the History Department will celebrate Teachers' Day.

We'll have a party in honor of the occasion to be held in the Wisdom Hall, on September 10, Friday evening, at 7 p.m.

We are looking forward to seeing you.

Sincerely,
Gao Ping
Gao Ping

② Accepting an Invitation

March 5, 2010

Dear Miss Liu,

Thank you for your luncheon invitation for Saturday, March 11, at 12 o'clock. I would be very glad to meet and talk with you about our cooperation.

I'll be there at 12 sharp, and look forward to seeing you.

Sincerely,
Tony
Tony

Key to Pick Up Your Grammar

1. You have to pay him ten dollars for parking here.
2. Why don't you write her a greeting card?
3. Do you work there eight hours a day?
4. They walk five miles a day.
5. We came here twenty years ago.



VII. 课文参考译文 (Text Translation for Reference)

对话 A: 邀请朋友吃饭

王红在美国攻读博士学位。她和卡尔·库柏在同一个实验室工作。

库柏: 哎,王,听说你刚发表了一篇论文。我想庆祝一下,明天晚上请你吃饭。怎么样?

王红: 啊,算了,真的不必了。要不你来和我一起吃饭吧。

库柏: 那可不行。我生日那天你为我做了我所吃过的最好的中餐。我本人不太会做饭,但是我非常想请你到外边吃一顿。你选吧,吃什么都行。

对话B: “吃顿美国餐怎么样?”

王红: 你说“吃什么都行”是什么意思?

库柏: 我们国家的人来自世界各地。所以我们的烹调也是来自世界各地的风味:意大利的、法国的、德国的、日本的,你说吃什么我们就有什么。如果你乐意,我们还可以到中国城去吃中餐。

王红: 吃顿美国餐怎么样?但是别要太贵的。高档地方让我觉得不舒服。

库柏: 好的。咱们就去一个我知道的挺不错的小餐馆。在那儿你可以吃到简单的传统美国餐。

王红: 太好了。我5点左右开车到你办公室来接你,好吗?

库柏: 好的。明天下午5点见。

短文A: 能请你们来和我们聚一聚吗?

亲爱的奥尔斯先生暨夫人:

本周六(5月21日)晚上我们要在家里举行非正式的晚宴,希望您二位能光临。您知道,哈维·泰勒教授和太太刚从中国回来,我们将一起分享他们的经历。因为你们在泰勒夫妇离开博尔德市之前就认识他们了,我们想你们一定很高兴与他们再次相见。

我和我丈夫已经听说你们在为博尔德市各大学的海外留学生寻找寄宿家庭,所以我们希望更多地了解你们。盼望你们能赏光。

苏珊·迈克古瑞夫妇

2010年5月2日

亲爱的迈克·古瑞先生和夫人:

非常感谢邀请我们参加21日的晚餐。我和卡尔将于6点到达。自从哈维·泰勒夫妇从中国回来之后,我们还没有机会同他们交谈,所以这次真是个难得的机会。谢谢你们邀请

我们参加。

另外，也感谢你们关心我们为博尔德市的海外留学生寻找寄宿家庭这一项目。

琳达

2010年5月7日

短文 B: 中国的用餐礼节

在中国主人家做客时你应该遵从用餐礼节和其他一些规矩，这样你做客一定会更加快乐。当然，你不了解这些规矩也是会被谅解的。

不要把筷子直立插在饭碗中，因为这种做法通常用在葬礼上，所以在主人和年长者面前这会被视为极端无礼。

茶壶口一定不要直对别人。恰当的摆法是让壶口朝向桌外。

不要用筷子敲击碗边，那将会被视为对主人或主厨的侮辱。

不要试着自己去将菜盘中的鱼翻过来并将刺剔掉。一般来说剔除下半侧鱼骨通常是由主人或上菜的人来做的事儿。有些人可能会认为（这也许是出于迷信）你这么做会带来晦气，可能会导致渔船翻船。

高等教育出版社

Unit 10

Asking the Way Indoors



I. 教学时间分配 (Time Allocation)

本单元共需4~5学时，对话1学时；课文A及练习2~3学时，课文B、语法等1学时（教师可根据本课内容的难易程度稍作增减）。Extra reading的目的为锻炼学生的独立阅读能力。教师宜在课上限时完成，可提出简短的问题让学生口头回答，书中的理解性练习可留给学生自己课后完成。



II. 教学目的与要求 (Aims and Requirements)

I 内容重点 (Language Focus)

1. 交际重点 (Communicative Focus)

询问、查找室内某一具体位置。

2. 重点训练单词和词组 (Focal Words and Expressions)

advertise, assign, chart, corridor, division, exit, finance, fountain, human, indoors, inform, limited, location, material, organize, orientation, pharmaceutical, promotion, representative, session, staff, straight, turn, upstairs, turn left, in particular

3. 重点句型和习惯表达法 (Focal Functions and Patterns)

Giving directions inside a building

- 1) Is there a fountain near here?
Can you tell me where the manager's office is?
Will you please tell me how to go to the reception room?
- 2) Take the lift to the third floor.
Turn right/left.
Then go straight ahead.
Go along the corridor.
- 3) Mr. Black's office is on the first (second) floor.
It's the first (second) door on the right/left.
It's on the right/left.
It's on your right/left.
It's in front of you.
It's opposite you.
It's in the middle of the hall.
It's next to the manager's room.
You can't miss it.

技能要求 (Skills Development)

1 听说 (Listening and Speaking)

能听懂并用英语进行有关询问、查找室内某一具体位置的对话，培养在大的建筑物内为外宾指示方向的初步能力。

2 读译 (Reading and Translating)

能读懂和翻译（英汉互译）有关询问楼内方位的短文及标识。

3 写 (Applied Writing)

- A. 能使用所学单词、词组、句型和语法写出有关楼内位置的英语句子。
- B. 英语室内常用的指示标等的基本写作格式。



III. 背景资料 (Background Information)

1 辉瑞制药集团 (Pfizer Pharmaceuticals Group)

Pfizer is, according to *Business Week*, “poised to become the new drug-industry leader.” “At Pfizer, we have a tradition of conquering uncharted territory. Again and again, we’ve defined ourselves by taking on challenges that no one else was able to tackle. And our spirit of enterprise has led to amazing achievements.”—William C. Steere, Jr., Chairman of the Board and Chief Executive Officer

Pfizer is ranked the world’s most admired pharmaceutical company by *Fortune* magazine.

Pfizer invests close to \$2.5 billion in research. With a history of more than 150 years old, Pfizer is one of the world’s premier pharmaceutical companies, recognized for its success in discovering and developing innovative drugs for humans and animals. The products are available in more than 150 countries.

2 玛丽·凯 (Mary Kay Ash)

Mary Kay may be the most successful woman entrepreneur in the world today, but she started her company as a single mother supporting three children — using her total life savings of \$5 000. Following her priorities — God first, family second, and career third — and some sound, savvy business strategies. She managed to create a multibillion-dollar international company as well as a fulfilling life that reflected her values.

Mary Kay accomplished all her goals without any special advantage — without trying to be a “superwoman”. Instead, she rediscovered the timeless secrets of true success and happiness and applied them in her life.

Mary Kay Ash is the founder and chairman emeritus of Mary Kay Cosmetics Inc., listed among *Fortune* magazine’s Most Admired Corporations in America and boasting annual retail sales of more than \$1.5 billion.



IV. 语言点 (Language Points)

1 课文补充注释 (Notes to Dialogues and Passage A)

1. In order to apply for a job at a joint venture, he comes to Pfizer Pharmaceuticals Limited to see the personnel manager for a job opening advertised in the newspaper.

为了在一家合资企业找到一份工作，他来到辉瑞制药有限公司拜见人事经理，询问报纸上刊登的一则招聘广告。

1) in order to 以便，为了（接不定式），可用于句首或句中表示目的。

e.g. In order to learn English, he gets up early to read it aloud every day.

为了学好英语，他每天早起朗读。

The Browns were saving as much as possible in order to buy a flat.

为了买一套公寓，布朗一家尽可能节衣缩食。

动词不定式做目的状语，也可不用in order，如本句的 to see the personnel manager ...

2) apply for 申请

e.g. To apply for a visa to go abroad, you must submit your passport together with some other application forms.

要想申请出国签证，就必须提交护照和其他申请表格。

2. Just go along the corridor, turn left at the corner.

顺着走廊走，在拐角处向左转。

turn left/right 向左/右拐

e.g. Go along the street, turn left at the first corner and you'll find the post office.

沿着大街往前走，第一个拐角处向左拐，就是邮局。

Turn left first, then turn right, the shopping center is in front of you.

先向左拐，再向右拐，你就看到购物中心了。

3. He Ming is informed to come to the company to take an interview at the reception room.

贺明得到通知要到公司的接待室去接受面试。

take an interview 参加面试 give an interview 进行面试

e.g. The receptionist told him to take an interview at the interviewer's room.

接待员告诉他在面试室面试。

Jane was given an interview and was put on the short list.

珍妮得到了面试机会并且被列入优先考虑的名单之中。

4. He is asking the office secretary to show him the way to the reception room.

他请办公室的秘书告诉他去接待室的路。

show sb the way to 告诉...去...的路

e.g. Excuse me. Will you show me the way to the airport?

劳驾。请问到飞机场怎么走？

As a receptionist, Mary often shows the visitors the way to the manager's office.

作为接待员，玛丽常常要告诉客人到经理室怎么走。

5. Will you please tell me how I can get to the reception room?

请问，去接待室怎么走？

此句 tell 的宾语是由疑问词 how 引导的从句。此时从句虽有疑问词但采用陈述句语序。

e.g. Tell us where he lives.

告诉我们他的住处。

Will you please tell me how I should fill in the application form?

请问申请表怎么填?

除动词tell之外,常跟疑问词引导的宾语从句的动词还有:

ask (询问), find out (查明), know (知道), show (展示), understand (明白), wonder (想知道)等。

e.g. He asked me how I came here.

他问我怎么到这里来的。

We must find out who did all this.

我们必须查明这一切都是谁干的。

6. Take the lift there to the third floor or just walk upstairs.

到那边乘电梯到三楼,或者步行上楼。

有关楼层的表达方式,英语同美语不同:

	英语	美语
1层	the ground floor	the first floor
2层	the first floor	the second floor
3层	the second floor	the third floor
4层	the third floor	the fourth floor

7. ..., Jane has to look after many things, ...

..., 珍妮每天必须处理许多事情, ...

look after 照看, 照管; 照顾; 负责处理

e.g. Don't worry, I can look after the children.

别担心, 我可以照看孩子。

Patients are well looked after in that hospital.

在那家医院, 病人们得到了很好的照料。

8. Next, Jane uses an organization chart to help her introduce the company organization and the locations of the various departments, in particular, the Sales and Marketing Divisions.

然后, 珍妮用一张“结构图”来辅助说明公司的组织机构和各部门的所在位置, 特别是销售部和市场部的位置。

1) organization chart 结构图

chart为示意图表。

e.g. a sales chart

销售图表

a weather chart

天气图

a bar chart

条形图

a pie chart

饼形分析图

2) ... the Sales and Marketing Divisions 是由 in particular 引导的同位语。本文中 various departments 具体指的是: Sales Division 销售部, Office Furniture Division 办公室家具销售部, Building Materials Division 建筑材料销售部, Marketing Division 市场部, Finance Division 财务部等。

e.g. Who is in charge of the Sales Division?

谁负责销售部?

Finance Division is on the first floor.

财务部在一层。

9. There are two Sales Divisions — Office Furniture and Building Materials, both of which are under the Line Director, Mr. Smith.

销售部有两个——办公室家具销售部和建筑材料销售部。这两个部门都归部门主任史密斯先生管辖。

1) ... under the Line Director, Mr. Smith

under *prep.* 在…手下工作, 在…的管辖下

e.g. You are our leader. We are under you.

你是头儿。我们归你管。

He has a staff of 100 working under him.

他手下有100名工作人员。

2) 这里 *line* 表示生意的一个方面, 如一类产品等 (a business, profession, trade, etc.), 故 a *line director* 是某一方面的主管, 这里译作“部门主任”。

10. She also tells the new sales representatives that they are assigned to the Office Furniture Division, ...

她还告诉新的销售代表们, 他们被分配到了办公室家具销售部。

be assigned to + *n./v.* 被分配到/去做

e.g. The girl was assigned to the Marketing Division.

这个女孩被分配到市场部。

I've been assigned to chair the meeting.

已指定我主持会议。

II 词汇用法 (Word Usage)

advertise *v.* to make a public announcement of a product so as to increase sales; to inquire or seek in a public notice, as in a newspaper 做广告; 登广告促销; 做公告, 如报纸上询事或寻人

e.g. The company advertised through the press.

公司通过报纸宣传。

He is advertising for an apartment.

他在登广告寻求公寓房。

You should advertise for someone to look after the store.

你该登个广告招聘人来照管铺子。

assign *v.* give sth to sb as a share of work to be done or of things to be used 分配

e.g. The teacher has assigned each of us a holiday task.

教师给我们每个人都分配了假日工作。

The two large classrooms have been assigned to us.

这两间大教室已经分配给我们了。

chart *n.* map, diagram, graph or table giving clear information, esp. about sth that changes over a period of time 示意图, 图表

e.g. Please look at the weather chart.

请看天气图。

The sales chart shows that the production of this company increases steadily.

销售图显示该公司的生产在稳步增长。

corridor *n.* long narrow passage, from which doors open into rooms or compartments 过道, 走廊

e.g. The sales department is at the end of the corridor.

销售部在走廊的尽头。

Go along the corridor and turn right and you'll find the office.

顺着走廊走, 向右拐, 就看见办公室了。

division *n.* any of the parts into which sth is divided 部分; 部门

e.g. The Sales Division of our company is on the third floor.

本公司的销售部在3层。

Are you in the Marketing Division?

你在市场部吗?

exit *n.* way out (of a public building) (公共建筑物的) 出口, 太平门

e.g. There are four emergency exits in the department store.

这家百货公司有4个紧急出口。

The exit signs in cinemas are usually illuminated.

电影院的出口标记通常都有灯光显示。

Antonym: **entrance** *n.* opening, gate, door, passage, etc. by which one enters sth 入口; 门; 通道

e.g. I'll pick you up at the entrance to the cinema.

我开车到电影院门口接你。

He stood at the entrance to the hospital.

他站在医院的门口。

finance *n.* management of (esp. public) money 财务; 财政

e.g. Mr. Smith is an expert in finance.

史密斯先生是一位财政专家。

People who work in a bank know about finance.

在银行工作的人懂金融。

fountain *n.* jet of water, esp. one forced up into the air artificially as an ornament 喷泉; 饮水器

e.g. The fountains of Rome are famed for their architectural beauty.

罗马的喷泉以其建筑之美而著称。

A fountain of water shot from the pipe.

一股水从水管中喷出。

human *a.* of man or mankind (contrasted with animals, God) 人的; 人类的

e.g. Human beings make mistakes sometimes.

人有时会犯错误。

Wang Hong works in Human Resources Division.

王红在人力资源部工作。

indoors *ad.* in or into a building 在(去)户内; 在(去)楼内

e.g. He had to keep indoors because of the bad weather.

天气恶劣, 他只好待在家里。

Stay indoors and don't go outdoors.

待在家里, 别出去。

Antonym: **outdoors** *ad.* in the open air; out of doors 在露天; 在外面; 在户外

e.g. It's so cold outdoors today.

今天外面真冷。

Building workers spend most of their time outdoors.

建筑工人大部分时间是在户外。

inform *v.* to impart information to; make aware of sth; to give or provide information 通知; 告知; 提供信息

e.g. The dean informed us that one of us would be promoted.

系主任告知我们其中一人会得到提拔。

The manager asked his salesmen to inform him of everything.

经理让销售人员把一切情况都报告给他。

TV helps to keep us well informed of everything happening in the world.

电视有助于使我们很好地了解世界上发生的每一件事。

limited *a.* restricted, few or small 有限的; 少的; 小的

e.g. Only a limited number of places are available.

只有少数地方可供使用。

The amount of money he has is rather limited.

他的资金相当有限。

location *n.* place or position 地方; 位置

e.g. They are looking for a suitable location for new buildings.

他们在寻找适合建筑新楼房的地点。

A post office should be built in a central location.

邮局应该建在中心位置。

material *n.* anything from which sth else is or can be made; cotton or other woven cloth from which clothes may be made 原料; 布料

e.g. We use high-quality raw material for our goods.

我们的产品是用优质原料制造的。

This material is very expensive.

这种布料价格昂贵。

organize *v.* put sb/sth into working order; arrange (parts, people) into an efficient system 组织

e.g. She loves to organize people.

她喜欢做组织人的工作。

The teacher organized the class into six groups.

教师把全班分成6组。

orientation *n.* activity of orientating oneself; state of being orientated 定位, 定向; 方向

e.g. It was so dark that the traveler lost his orientation.

天太黑, 游客迷失了方向。

Jane is giving an orientation of her company to the new employees.

珍妮正在为新雇员介绍公司总的情况。

pharmaceutical *n.* drugs, medicines 医药, 药品

a. of or connected with the making and distribution of drugs and medicines

制药的; 配药的

e.g. Pfizer is one of the world's famous pharmaceutical companies.

辉瑞制药公司是世界著名的制药公司之一。

Mark works as a pharmaceutical chemist.

马克是一位药剂师。

promotion *n.* raising or being raised to a higher rank or position 提升; 晋级

e.g. Rod has gained promotion.

罗德已获得晋升。

If you are successful, you can expect promotion.

你只要做出成绩, 就能指望获得提拔。

representative *n.* person elected or appointed to represent or act for others 代表

e.g. We sent our representatives to the conference.

我们派代表参加了会议。

The woman became a representative in the House of Commons.

这位女士成为一名下议院的议员。

session *n.* a meeting or period of time used esp. by a group for a particular purpose 一段时间; 会期

e.g. Where is the first session to be held?

首次会议在哪儿举行?

Sometimes I record a session of the class.

有时我录一段上课的录音。

staff *n.* group of assistants working together in a business, etc. responsible to a manager or

person in authority 全体职工；全体雇员

e.g. We need more staff in the office.

我们办公室需要增加人手。

The staff in this shop are very helpful.

这家店里的店员很热心。

straight *ad.* not in a curve or at an angle 直接地；挺直地

e.g. Keep going straight on for two miles.

一直往前走两英里。

The smoke rose straight up.

那股烟直线上升。

turn *v.* (cause sb/sth to) change position or direction so as to face or start moving in the specified direction 改换方向，转弯

e.g. She turned to look at me.

她转过身来看着我。

It's time we turned and went home.

我们该回家去了。

upstairs *ad.* up the stairs; to or on an upper floor 向楼上；往楼上；在楼上

e.g. I was upstairs when it happened.

这件事发生时我正在楼上。

He lives upstairs.

他住在楼上。

Antonym: **downstairs** *ad.* down the stairs; to or on a lower floor 向楼下；往楼下；在楼下

e.g. We'll wait for you downstairs.

我们在楼下等你。

Next morning she was downstairs early.

第二天早晨她下楼很早。

in particular 特别是，特别（地）

e.g. You should avoid eating fat meat, pork in particular.

你应该避免吃肥肉，特别是猪肉。

He suggested several plans at the meeting, and one in particular seemed good and practical.

他在会上提出了几项计划，有一项看起来特别切实可行。



V. 练习指导及补充练习 (Guide to Exercises and Supplementary Exercises)

1. Check your understanding 是为了检查学生对有关对话及短文的理解。教师应注意引导学生用自己的话来回答。教师可根据对话与短文给出一些补充练习。

补充练习:

For Dialogue A

Are the following statements true (T) or false (F) according to Dialogue A?

- 1) He Ming came to the company to apply for a job.
- 2) He Ming got there in the afternoon.
- 3) The personnel manager happened to be out on business.
- 4) The receptionist showed He Ming the way to the manager's room.
- 5) The manager's room is the second door on the right, near the Entrance sign.

答案:

- 1) T 2) F 3) F 4) T 5) F

For Dialogue B

Are the following statements true (T) or false (F) according to Dialogue B?

- 1) The interview is to be held at the manager's room.
- 2) The reception room is on the third floor.
- 3) A person in the Human Resources Division shows He Ming the way.
- 4) The office secretary is a lady.
- 5) He Ming is sure to find the reception room.

答案:

- 1) F 2) T 3) F 4) T 5) T

For Passage A

Answer the following questions briefly according to Passage A.

- 1) Who is Jane? (A Promotion Manager of Mary Kay.)
- 2) What does she have to do today? (She has to give an orientation session to some new sales representatives.)
- 3) What does Jane use to help her introduce the company organization and the locations? (She uses an organization chart.)
- 4) Which divisions does Jane introduce in particular? (The Sales and Marketing Divisions.)
- 5) Who is Mr. Smith? (The Line Director.)
- 6) Where is Mr. Smith office? (It's on the fifth floor.)
- 7) Who are assigned to the Office Furniture Division? (The new sales representatives.)
- 8) Who is Hal Bohlman? (Divisional Sales Manager.)

- 9) Is Judy Black in charge of the Marketing Division? (No, she isn't. She is the Office Manager in charge of the clerical staff.)
- 10) Where is Judy Black's office? (It's on the first floor.)

2. Learn to communicate 是对本课出现的关于在楼内问路的句型与短语的总结与复习, 除此之外对话中还有一些常会出现的句型和短语。

- 1) Excuse me. I'm looking for the Reception Room.
Excuse me. Where's Mr. Lee's office?
Good morning. I've got an appointment with Miss Wang in the Sales Department.
Excuse me. Can you tell me how to get to Mr. Zhang's office in the Production Department?
- 2) I'm in Miss Wang's office.
I'm in the Sales Department.
He's in the Marketing Department.
She's in the Reading Room.
They are in the Meeting Room/Conference Room.
- 3) Take the lift/elevator to the 4th floor.
Come out of the lift/elevator, turn right and then turn left.
The Personnel Department is the second on the right.
It's between Ann and Bill's offices.
The Office Furniture is near the fountain.
It's next to Miss Chen's office.
The Manager's Office is the first on the left.
It's the first office on the left.
It's opposite the Manager's Office.
It's at the far end, the last room on the left/right. His name is on the door.
- 4) Go upstairs.
Go up here.
Go downstairs.
Go down there.
Go straight ahead.
Go up to the third floor.
Go along the corridor.
Go along the lobby (大厅).
- 5) Which lift/elevator should I take, please?
Any lift/elevator will do.
- 6) I'll show you the way.
I'll show you where it is.
Follow me, please.
Miss Wang asked me to send you up when you arrive.

3. Build up your language stock 是为了巩固和扩展本单元新学的单词和词组。练习9(句型套用) 是为学生学习掌握本课重要句型专门补充编写的。这种句型套用练习可引导学生深入理解句子结构及其精妙之处, 并在此基础上模拟套用这些句型, 学习效果十分显著。因此教师要作为重点在课上引导学生完成这一练习, 还可要求他们在练习的基础上背诵这些句型。除要求学生认真完成练习外, 教师还可以补充有关练习, 以便学生进一步消理解本单元的难点和重点。

词汇补充练习:

(英译汉:)

- 1) Excuse me, I'm looking for the Manager's Room.
- 2) Good morning. I've got an appointment with Mr. Zhang from the Marketing Department.
- 3) Take the lift/elevator to the fifth floor.
- 4) Come out of the lift/elevator, go along the corridor and then turn right.
- 5) The Marketing Department is the second on the right. It's opposite the Manager's Room.
- 6) The reception desk is in the middle of the hall on the first floor.
- 7) The Sales Department is in front of you.
- 8) The secretary sent him up to the Human Resources Department.
- 9) The application interview is to be held in the reception room of the company.
- 10) Walk along the hall and turn right and then left.

(英译汉答案:)

- 1) 对不起, 我要找经理办公室。
- 2) 早上好, 市场部的张先生约我见他。
- 3) 乘电梯到5层。
- 4) 出电梯, 沿着走廊向前走, 再向右拐。
- 5) 市场部在右手第二间, 正对着经理室。
- 6) 接待处在—层大厅的中部。
- 7) 销售部就在你面前的那个房间。
- 8) 秘书送他到了人力资源部。
- 9) 申请面试在公司的接待室进行。
- 10) 顺着大厅向前走, 向右拐, 然后再向左转。

(汉译英:)

- 1) 劳驾, 请问财务部在哪儿? (Finance Department)
- 2) 她用一张结构图来帮助她介绍公司的组织结构。(organization chart)
- 3) 销售部在人事部的隔壁。(next to)
- 4) 建筑材料部在几层? (floor)

- 5) 你不会找不到的。(miss)
- 6) 请问我该乘哪个电梯?(take lift)
- 7) 史密斯先生的办公室是左手第二间,就是靠近饮水器的那间。(on the left)
- 8) 他明天下午要去参加考试。(take an interview)
- 9) 大学毕业后,贺明被分配到这家合资企业。(assign)
- 10) 我在3层办公室家具部对面的办公室等你。(meet)

(汉译英答案:)

- 1) Excuse me, but could you tell me where the Finance Department is?
- 2) She uses an organization chart to help her introduce the company organization.
- 3) The Sales Department is next to the Personnel Department.
- 4) Which floor is the Building Materials on?
- 5) You can't miss it.
- 6) Which lift should I take, please?
- 7) Mr. Smith's office is the second on the left, the one near the fountain.
- 8) He is going to take an interview tomorrow afternoon.
- 9) After graduation from the university, He Ming was assigned to this joint-venture company.
- 10) I'll meet you in the office opposite the Office Furniture Department.

4. Extra reading 的目的是锻炼学生的独立阅读能力。教师宜在课上限时完成,可提出简短的问题让学生口头回答,书中的理解性练习可留给学生自己课后完成。

5. Passage B 为主课文A的补充短文,分别设有阅读理解和句型翻译套写两项练习,其中的重要词汇注释如下:

Passage B的重要词汇注释如下

alike *a.* 相似的

e.g. Friends are generally alike in background and tastes.

一般来说朋友的经历和品味都是相像的。

confused *a.* 困惑的;混乱的

e.g. There is a confused mass of paper on the floor.

地板上有一堆杂乱无章的纸张。

department *n.* 部门,系

e.g. I will graduate from the Foreign Languages Department of a famous university.

我即将毕业于一所知名大学的外语系。

familiar *a.* 熟悉的

e.g. Please introduce me a guide who is familiar with those old buildings.
请给我介绍一位熟知那些古老建筑的导游。

flyover *n.* 立交桥

e.g. These newly built flyovers offer convenient traffic to the city.
这些新建的立交桥为城市交通带来了便利。

noisy *a.* 嘈杂的

e.g. The noisy traffic is a continual annoyance to the citizens.
交通的噪声使城市居民感到烦恼。

otherwise *ad.* 否则；不然

e.g. I was too busy. Otherwise I might have helped.
我太忙了。不然我也许可以帮得上忙的。

skyscraper *n.* 摩天楼

e.g. There are many skyscrapers in Hong Kong.
香港高楼林立。

whatever *pron.* 无论什么，凡是

e.g. Do whatever you please.
你喜欢做什么就做什么。

wherever *pron.* 无论那里

e.g. Wherever I go, she always follows me.
无论我到什么地方，她总是跟着。

worth *n.* 价值 *adj.* 值得

e.g. The winner will receive ten pounds' worth of books.
获胜者将得到价值十英镑的书籍。
It isn't worth repairing the old chair.
这把破椅子不值得修了。

6. 本课的Applied Writing 为熟悉了解大型建筑物，如办公大楼、公司、商店和娱乐场所的室内指示标牌。应提醒学生，不论是标牌还是路牌，都是为了吸引人们的注意，使人们在极短的时间内得到必要的信息。所以，在写标牌和路牌时，字数要尽量少，语言要精练，有时在文字旁还可以配上必要的图形。

7. 本课的Pick Up Your Grammar 复习介词短语和动词不定式作状语，可参见《英语拓展教程2》语法附录I-9。教师还可根据学生的实际水平补充少量短句进行口头语法练习。



VI. 练习答案 (Key to Exercises)

Key to Integrated Skills Development

- 1 1. He is a college student.
2. In Pfizer Pharmaceuticals Limited.
3. The receptionist.
4. To apply for a job.
5. In the reception room.
6. By either taking the lift or walking upstairs.
- 2 1. d 2. d 3. a 4. b 5. c
- 4 1. sir 2. help 3. tell 4. the 5. third
6. Take 7. to 8. turn 9. on 10. a lot
- 5 1. can you tell me where Mr. Milton's room is?
2. Will you please tell me how to get there?
3. When I walk out of the lift on the third floor, how can I get there?
4. Thanks for your help.
- 6 1. In order to 2. applying for 3. in the middle of
4. goes along 5. turns right 6. takes
7. walking out of 8. goes straight ahead 9. in front of
- 7 1. 为了找到经理室, 他向大厅的接待室走来。
2. 请问经理室在哪里?
3. 沿走廊向前走, 在拐角处向左拐。
4. 在那儿乘电梯到三楼。
5. 你会看到的。/ 你不会错过的。
6. 在大厅中间乘电梯到八楼。
7. 先在拐角处向左转, 然后在饮水机处向右转。
8. 沿着大厅中央的走廊走, 在会客室处向左转。
9. 你从八楼的电梯走出后, 再一直往前走。
10. 就是你前面的那个房间。
- 8 1. Commercial Development 2. Sales Division 3. Marketing Division
4. Office Furniture 5. Building Materials 6. Finance
7. Human Resources Division 8. Personnel Department 9. Administration
10. Advertisement 11. Communications 12. Accounting
- 9 1. a. 总统以对大家的祝福开始了他的新年祝词。
b. The student started his morning report by giving some information about the weather.

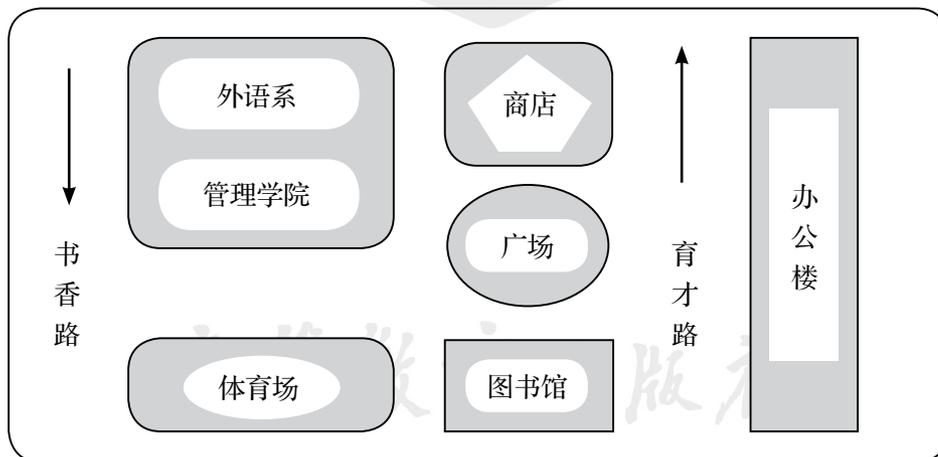
- c. The head waiter began his long apology by saying sorry to the customer.
2. a. 演讲者唱了一曲欢乐的歌作为她讲话的结束。
b. With a homemade cake, my mother ended her traditional festival cooking.
c. With a beautiful pose, the girl ended her performance.
- 10
1. It is on the tenth floor of the Commerce Building.
 2. It is about twenty feet long and ten feet wide.
 3. The walls are light green and the ceiling is white.
 4. There are two painted radiators for heating the room.
 5. There is a brown door.
 6. There is a large blackboard.
 7. It is in front of the blackboard.
 8. They are for students' coats and jackets.
 9. There are about twenty.
 10. Each chair has a flat right arm.
 11. It is a pleasant and comfortable classroom.
- 11
1. They all have a lot of skyscrapers and shops, streets and flyovers, cars and crowds of people.
 2. He may feel so confused.
 3. He must have a good sense of directions.
 4. He suggests touring by taxi.
 5. The taxi driver can tell you all the information about the city and he can also be your personal tour guide.
 6. No, he thinks it is worthwhile.
- 12
1. a. 不然的话, 城市经济可能会更遭。
b. Otherwise, it is likely that the customers will lose their interest in our products.
c. Otherwise, it is likely that he will spend all his time on this useless game.
 2. a. 他们去南京最快捷但却是最费钱的方式是坐飞机。
b. The most economical and efficient way for you to get information is by searching the Internet.
c. The slowest but healthiest way for me to go to work is on foot.
 3. a. 她父母让她做什么, 她就做什么。
b. Don't hesitate to tell me whatever you need.
c. Some parents just buy whatever their children want.
 4. a. 因此不管礼物多么小, 代表的友谊是最珍贵的。
b. So however expensive the courses may be, the knowledge and skills you have learned will be worthwhile.
c. So however hard the life there may be, the experience you get will be unforgettable.

Key to Applied Writing

Sample 1 学校主楼示意图

学生处 201	教务处 202	校长室 203	楼 梯	行政办 204	资料室 205	档案室 206
财务部 101	会计处 102	会计处 103		接待室 104	市场部 105	人事处 106

Sample 2 校园示意图



Key to Pick Up Your Grammar

1. Let's have a party in the garden.
2. She felt much better at last.
3. The train was late again because of the bad weather.
4. I would never be a doctor without your help.
5. On hearing the news, he smiled.
6. He tried hard to earn money to support his family.
7. How can we finish the work within three days?
8. We need that dictionary to translate the book.
9. She has been my friend for ten years.
10. He went to that country to learn the language and culture.



VII. 课文参考译文 (Text Translation for Reference)

对话 A: 经理室在哪里?

贺明即将大学毕业。为了在一家合资企业找到一份工作，他来到辉瑞制药有限公司拜见人事经理，询问报纸上刊登的一则招聘广告。

接待员：早上好，先生。有什么事吗？

贺明：早上好。请问我在哪里能见到人事部经理？

接待员：他在办公室，先生。

贺明：那么他的办公室在哪里？

接待员：顺着走廊走，在拐角处向左转。

贺明：那是经理室吗？

接待员：不是。那是人力资源部。

贺明：经理室到底在哪里？

接待员：从人力资源部向右拐，经理室在你右侧的第二个门，在出口指示牌旁边。

贺明：你是说沿着走廊往前走，向左拐，再向右拐，经理室在我右侧的第二个门。

接待员：是的，你不会找不到的。

贺明：谢谢你。

对话 B: 接待室在哪里?

贺明得到通知要到公司的接待室去接受面试。他请办公室的秘书告诉他去接待室的路。

贺明：你好，小姐。请问，去接待室怎么走？

秘书：到那儿乘电梯到三楼，或者步行上楼。

贺明：从三楼出电梯后，再怎么走？

秘书：沿大厅中间的走廊走，在会客室处向左拐。然后一直向前走，接待室就在前面。

贺明：沿走廊走，向左拐，然后一直向前走。

秘书：你前面的房间就是接待室。

贺明：谢谢你的帮助。

秘书：不用谢。

短文 A: 公司机构

作为玛丽·凯公司推销部的经理，珍妮每天必须处理许多事情，其中包括向新员工介绍公司的情况和公司的组织结构。

今天，她得给一些新的销售代表讲课并作全面介绍。她先开始讲解玛丽·凯的业务情

况。然后，珍妮用一张“结构图”来辅助说明公司的组织机构和各部门的所在位置，特别是销售部和市场部的位置。销售部有两个——办公室家具销售部和建筑材料销售部，这两个部门都归部门主任史密斯先生管辖。史密斯先生的办公室在五楼。她对新的销售代表们说“你们可以在大厅中央乘电梯到五楼，然后在饮水机处向右拐，办公室在后面的第四个门。”

她还告诉新的销售代表们，他们被分配到了办公室家具部，并要求他们向部门销售经理哈尔·鲍尔曼报告工作，鲍尔曼的办公室在一楼。从这个房间走出，向左拐，再向右拐，他的办公室就在左侧的第二个门。她还解释说，还有一个办公室主任朱迪·布莱克，她负责管理办公室职员的工作。她的办公室在一楼财会部旁边。公司介绍就此结束。

短文 B: 一个出租汽车司机就是一个好向导

现在，城市看起来越来越相似，都是高楼和商店林立，街道和立交桥纵横交错，汽车和人群拥挤成一团。置身于一座嘈杂的城市中，你可能会觉得困惑不已。假如想要去一座自己不熟悉的城市观光，你应该具备很强的方向感。否则，你将很有可能迷路。因此，最为方便但同时又是最昂贵的方法是搭乘出租汽车游逛。出租汽车司机对自己的城市了如指掌，他能告诉你想要知道的一切。同时，他也将会是你的私人导游，能带你去任何你想要去的地方。所以，无论乘坐出租汽车有多么昂贵，你从司机那里得到的忠告都将会物有所值。

高等教育出版社

Unit

11

Asking the Way Outdoors



I. 教学时间分配 (Time Allocation)

本单元共需4~5学时，对话1学时；课文A及练习2~3学时，课文B、语法等1学时（教师可根据本课内容的难易程度稍作增减）。Extra reading的目的为锻炼学生的独立阅读能力。教师宜在课上限时完成，可提出简短的问题让学生口头回答，书中的理解性练习可留给学生自己课后完成。



II. 教学目的与要求 (Aims and Requirements)

I 内容重点 (Language Focus)

1. 交际重点 (Communicative Focus)

询问、查找户外某一具体位置，涉及迷路、问路、指示方向、查地图等。

2. 重点训练单词和词组 (Focal Words and Expressions)

case, church, complicated, finally, historic, outdoors, passenger, petrol, puzzle, repeat, sailor, stay, terminal, traffic, turning, on the corner

3. 重点句型和习惯表达法 (Focal Functions and Patterns)

Enquiring 问路

- 1) How can I get to the railway station?
- 2) Is there a shop near there/over there?
- 3) Can you tell me where the store is?
- 4) Will you please tell me how to go/get to the hotel?

Directing 指路

- 1) Go straight on until you come to a garage.
- 2) Turn right/left at the school.
- 3) Go along/Keep going along the street.
- 4) Take the first/second turning on your right/left.
- 5) Go up/down this street.
- 6) The second turning/the next right turning.
- 7) The museum is on the corner/in front of you/to the south/at the opposite.
- 8) There is a petrol station on the corner.

II 技能要求 (Skills Development)**1 听说 (Listening and Speaking)**

能听懂并用英语进行简短的有关问路的对话，培养为外宾指引道路的初步能力。

2 读译 (Reading and Translating)

能读懂和翻译有关询问地址、方位的短文。

3 写 (Applied Writing)

- A. 能使用所学词汇、句型和语法将简短的汉语句子译成英语。尤其注意套用本单元的交际句型。
- B. 熟悉并了解英文各种户外公共指示标牌的基本写作格式。

**III. 背景资料 (Background Information)****1 波士顿 (Boston)**

Boston is the capital of Massachusetts and is also New England's largest city in the United States. The city is named for the English port in Lincolnshire. It is situated on a hilly

peninsula, where the Mystic and Charles rivers flow into Massachusetts Bay. With one of the finest natural harbors in the United States, it is New England's most important seaport.

The city has grown by annexation and reclamation to more than 35 times its colonial size. Included within the city limits are East Boston, Charlestown, Roxbury, Dorchester, Brighton, West Roxbury, Jamaica Plain, and Hyde Park. The metropolitan area, however, includes parts of at least 5 counties.

Historic landmarks abound in the Boston area. Churches of significance include King's Chapel, Christ Church, Trinity Episcopal Church, Holy Cross Cathedral (Roman Catholic), Saint Paul's Cathedral (Episcopal), and the first Christian Science Church (1894). Other notable buildings include the Old State House, Paul Revere's House, Faneuil Hall, Old South Meeting House, and the Quincy Markets.

2 老北教堂 (The Old North Church)

The Old North Church was built in 1723 in the Georgian style following Christopher Wren. In this rare and beautiful building — that is still an active Episcopal church — art, history and faith meet in a special way. It was from the steeple of the Old North Church that the two lanterns closely associated with Paul Revere were hung by Robert Newman, the Church sexton, on April 18, 1775, igniting the War for Independence and leading to the birth of the United States. The Old North Church is part of the Episcopal Diocese of Massachusetts.

The enduring fame of the Old North Church and its sure place in America's story derives from a fleeting moment on the night of April 18, 1775. It was then that the sexton, Robert Newman, climbed the steeple, and briefly hung the two lanterns.

Worship, of course, was central to the life of the new building. The builders of Christ Church determined that it should represent the best of recent English architecture and looked to London churches designed by Sir Christopher Wren for inspiration. They built a church inspired by Wren but unmistakably unique. What was achieved is a building of perfect proportions and sensitive detail. It is a design that unites a complex of elegant details and attention on the altar as the focal point of worship.



IV. 语言点 (Language Points)

0 课文补充注释 (Notes to Dialogues and Passage A)

1. Mark, a foreign sailor, is going back to his ship after he did some shopping in the city.

一位外国水手马克，到市内买了些东西后准备返回船上去。

1) go back to = return 返回

e.g. When do you go back home from school?

你们何时放学回家?

Oh! It's late. I'm afraid I have to go back home now.

唉! 天不早了, 我恐怕得回家啦。

此外, go back to 还有“回过来谈”、“可追溯到”的意思。

Let's go back to what I was saying just now.

咱们再回到我刚才说的问题上。

Our Spring Festival goes back to ancient times.

我们的春节可以追溯到古代。

2) do some shopping

买东西, 购物

do + some + V-ing 可以构成许多短语:

e.g. do some cooking 做饭

do some cleaning 打扫房间

do some reading 读书

do some running 跑步

do some washing 洗衣服

2. The passenger terminal is straight ahead, right in front of you.

客运码头就在前面, 你的正前方。

right 为副词, 常置于状语前, 表示强调, 意思是“就”, “正”。

e.g. He was standing right beside me.

他就站在我旁边。

Dick looked the man right in the eye.

迪克直视着那人。

3. And how long is it going to take me to get there?

还有, 需要多长时间才能到达那里?

it takes sb some time to do sth 花某人一些时间做某事

e.g. It takes you half an hour to get there by air.

坐飞机半小时可以到达那里。

It takes you about fifteen minutes to get to the harbor by bus.

坐公共汽车大约15分钟可以到达港口。

It is going to take sb some time to do sth 是上一句型的将来式。

比较: 词 spend, take, cost

这三个词均可以表示“花费”之意, 但用法结构不同。

spend 的主语通常是“人”, 宾语可以是“时间”、“金钱”、“精力”等。表示“花…在…上”, 后加 on + 名词或 in (常省略) + 动名词, 不用不定式。

e.g. He spends a lot of money on books.

他花很多钱买书。

He spends a lot of time (in) reading books.

他花很多时间读书。

take 表示“需要，耗费”，主语是“事”，常跟双宾语。

It took us two hours to do the homework.

做作业花了我们两小时。

The writing of the article took me three days.

写这篇文章花了我3天时间。

cost 主要指花费金钱、时间、劳力、精力等。不用人作主语。

How much does the DVD cost you?

这台DVD多少钱？

Writing this book cost us much time and energy.

写这本书花费了我们许多时间和精力。

4. Excuse me, officer. Can you help me?

劳驾，警察先生，您能帮助我吗？

officer = police officer, 用作对男女警官的称呼。

e.g. —Stop!

—Yes, officer.

—停车！

—是，警察先生。

The officer looks very cool in that dark blue uniform.

警官穿那件深蓝色警服看上去很酷。

5. In that case, you can take a taxi from the opposite side of the street.

如果是这样的话，你可以在马路对面乘出租车。

in that case = if that happens or if it is so 如果是那样的话

e.g. In that case, I have no more to say.

如果是那样的话，我就没什么可说的了。

You say you can't offer me high salary. In that case, I have to think it over.

你说你不能付给我高工资，如果是那样的话，我得好好考虑考虑。

6. Last summer my brother and I stayed for a week with some friends in Boston.

去年夏天，我和我弟弟同几个朋友在波士顿待了一个星期。

last—this—next:

<i>Past—last</i>	<i>Present—this</i>	<i>Future—next</i>
last (yesterday) morning 昨天早晨	this morning 今天早晨	next (tomorrow) morning 明天上午
last night 昨夜	tonight 今夜	tomorrow night 明天夜里
last week 上周	this week 本星期	next week 下周

<i>Past—last</i>	<i>Present—this</i>	<i>Future—next</i>
last month 上月	this month 本月	next month 下月
last year 去年	this year 今年	next year 明年

e.g. Last week we went to see our friend Bill.

上个星期我们去看了朋友比尔。

I'm sure I saw the man somewhere last month.

我肯定上个月在哪儿见过此人。

the previous year 与 the year before:

从过去某一时刻算起, 在其前发生的时间, 则用the ... before或the previous ...。含义为“那天的前一个...”“其前一个...”等。

e.g. You said you had met him the night before.

你说那天的前一晚上你见过他。

I was sure I had seen the man somewhere the previous week.

我肯定前一个星期在什么地方见过那个人。

the ... before last ...:

表示“前...”。如 the year before last 前年, the week before last 再前一个星期, the day before yesterday 前天。

We met at the station the day before yesterday.

我们前天见过面。

7. Just then somebody walked over to us ...

就在这时, 一个人向我们走来...

just then = just at that time 就在那时, 就在这时候

e.g. We were leaving and just then a policeman came over to us.

我们刚要走, 就在这时一位警察朝我们走来。

It was just then that Mark came in.

就在这时候马克走进来了。

比较: just now 刚才, 前一会儿; 现在, 这会

e.g. Tom came in just now.

汤姆刚进来。

Where's John? He was here just now.

约翰在哪? 他刚才还在这儿呢。

Just now they are asleep.

这会儿他们睡着了。

I'm staying in London just now with a friend.

我现在和一个朋友在伦敦。

词汇用法 (Word Usage)

case *n.* an instance of something; an occurrence; an example; a set of circumstances or a state of affairs; a situation 事例；事件；情况，状况

in case 如果；万一 in case of 如果发生

e.g. In this case I'm acting for this company.

我在这次诉讼中代表这家公司。

—Is that the case?

—No, that's not the case.

—事实是那样吗?

—不,事实并非如此。

You'd better take along an umbrella, just in case of rain.

你最好带上雨伞,怕万一下雨。

This is my telephone number. Please call me in case of emergency.

这是我的电话号码。如果有紧急状况请给我打电话。

There were three cases of SARs in this community.

这个社区有三个非典病例。

church *n.* building used for public Christian worship 教堂

e.g. Many people came into the big church to celebrate Christmas.

许多人来到这座大教堂欢庆圣诞。

The Old North Church in the city of Boston is very famous in the United States.

波士顿的老北教堂在美国很有名气。

complicated *a.* made up of many interconnected parts 结构复杂的

e.g. This complicated machine is made up of many different parts.

这台复杂的机器由许多不同的部件组成。

This is so complicated a chart that few people can understand it.

这张图表太复杂了,几乎没有人能看得懂。

finally *ad.* lastly; in conclusion 最后;总之

e.g. Finally, I would like to say a few words.

最后,我想说几句。

Thus the question was finally settled.

这样问题终于解决了。

historic *a.* famous or important in history 历史上著名的或重要的

e.g. This is a historic occasion.

这是具有重大历史意义的时刻。

There are many historic spots in that city.

那座城市有许多历史名胜。

outdoors *ad.* in the open air; out of doors 在露天；在外面，在户外

e.g. It's cold outdoors.

外面很冷。

In hot cities, such as Wuhan, some people sleep outdoors in summer.

在天气炎热的城市，比如武汉，有些人在夏天露天睡觉。

passenger *n.* person traveling in a car, bus, train, plane, ship, etc. other than the driver, the pilot or a member of the crew 乘客

e.g. He noticed a middle-aged passenger.

他注意到一位中年的乘客。

The passenger took a seat beside me as soon as he got on the bus.

这位乘客一上车就坐在我的旁边。

petrol *n.* refined petroleum used to drive engines 汽油

e.g. You can stop and fill up with petrol at the next petrol station.

你可以在下一个加油站停车加油。

American people say "gas" instead of "petrol".

美国人说“gas”不说“petrol”。

puzzle *v.* make (sb) think hard; perplex 让(某人)动脑筋；使困惑

e.g. Her reply puzzled me.

她的回答把我弄糊涂了。

He puzzled his brains to find the answer.

他绞尽脑汁以寻求答案。

repeat *v.* say or write (sth) again once or more than once 重复做

e.g. Now repeat the past form of the verb "fly" after me.

下面跟我重复动词“飞”的过去式。

She repeated what she had said.

她重复了自己说过的话。

sailor *n.* member of a ship's crew, esp. one below the rank of officer; seaman 水手，海员

e.g. Tom is a good sailor.

汤姆是个好水手。

stay *v.* continue in a certain state 维持某状态

e.g. They stayed friends for years.

他们的友谊维系了多年。

The doctor told him to stay in bed and drink more water.

医生嘱咐他卧床休息多喝水。

terminal *n.* building at the end of a railway line, bus route, etc. 终点站

e.g. The buses come to the terminal and go in all directions.

所有的公共汽车都开到终点站，然后向四处驶去。

I'll meet you at the terminal.

我在终点站等你。

traffic *n.* vehicles moving along a road or street 往来于街道的车辆；交通

e.g. There's usually a lot of traffic at this time of day.

每天在这段时间往来车辆都很多。

Look! A traffic accident happened over there.

瞧！那边出车祸了。

turning *n.* place where one road leads off from another (道路的) 转弯处, 岔路口

e.g. Don't take the wrong turning.

别拐错弯。

Please take the second turning on the left.

请在第二个拐弯处向左转。

on the corner place at which two lines, side edges, or surfaces meet 在拐角处

e.g. A policeman found the lost boy on the corner of the street at night.

晚上一位警察在街角发现了那个走失的男孩。

We passed the bookshop on the corner.

我们经过了拐角处的书店。



V. 练习指导及补充练习 (Guide to Exercises and Supplementary Exercises)

1. Check your understanding 是为了检查学生对A、B两组对话以及课文A的理解，教师在训练中应注意引导学生用自己的话来回答。

补充练习如下：

For Dialogue A

Are the following statements true (T) or false (F) according to Dialogue A?

- 1) After he did some shopping in the city, Mark lost his way.
- 2) So Mark asked a woman for help.
- 3) Mark wanted to find the way back to the passenger terminal.
- 4) It takes Mark about a quarter to get back on foot.
- 5) No. 2 bus will take Mark back right to the harbor.
- 6) Both No. 2 bus and No. 15 bus can take Mark right to the harbor.

C. Slowly.

D. Casually.

答案:

1) B 2) C 3) D 4) A 5) B 6) A 7) C 8) A

2. Learn to communicate 是对本课所学关于户外问路的句型的总结, 教师应指导学生熟读这些词语和句型, 并组织学生分组进行角色练习, 在口语中常见的句子还有:

- 1) Excuse me, sir/miss/madam/officer.
Can you tell me where the post office/mall/supermarket/bank/airport/bus stop/railway station/hotel/restaurant is?
It's two blocks straight ahead/three miles away/on the other side of the street.
- 2) Which direction is it to the church/university/theater/cinema?
Turn right/left/at the next turning. You can't miss it.
- 3) How far is it to the airport/hospital/International Hotel?
It's a long way/short distance/short walk/long drive.
It's a long way from here to the airport/hospital/International Hotel.
- 4) Could you tell me where the nearest telephone/ladies' room/men's room is?
Go that way for a block, then turn right. It's in front of you.
- 5) Could you tell me the way to the Science Center/shopping center/subway/zoo/park?
Go straight on and turn right/left. It's on your right/left.
It's just around the corner.
It's opposite the bank.

问路的对话:

- Stranger: Excuse me, officer. Could you tell me how I can get to the Holiday Inn?
Policeman: Go straight on until you come to the traffic lights. Go across the street and walk on for two blocks and then take the left turning. Go on ahead and you'll find a stop sign. Turn right at the stop sign and the Holiday Inn is just in front of you. You can't miss it.
Stranger: Well, sorry, it's too complicated for me.
Policeman: In that case, you can take a taxi here.
Stranger: That's a good idea. Thank you very much. That's very kind of you.
Policeman: You're welcome.

3. Build up your language stock 的目的为加深学生对本课词汇的理解及提高其灵活应用能力。练习9 (句型套用) 是为学生学习掌握本课重要句型专门补充编写的, 这种句型套用练习可引导学生深入理解句子结构及其精妙之处, 并在此基础上模拟套用这些句型, 学习效果十分显著。因此教师要作为重点在课上引导学生完成这一练习, 还可要求他们在练习的基础上背诵这些句型。教师还可以增加一些类似的练习。

词汇补充练习:

〔汉译英:〕

1. 劳驾, 请问去天安门广场怎么走? (excuse)
2. 国际饭店离这儿多远? (How far)
3. 请问最近的医院怎么走? (the nearest)
4. 博物馆在右手的拐角处。 (on the corner)
5. 在第二个路口向左拐。 (take the turning)
6. 一直往前走走到停车标志那里, 然后再往前走2个街区 (stop sign)
7. 如果是那样的话, 你可以乘出租车去颐和园。 (in that case)
8. 走到红绿灯那儿, 再问问警察。 (traffic lights)
9. 去购物中心朝哪个方向走? (direction)
10. 用不了5分钟你就走到了。 (take)

〔汉译英答案:〕

1. Excuse me, could you please tell me how to get to the Tian'anmen Square?
2. How far is it to the International Hotel?
3. Could you tell me where the nearest hospital is?
4. The museum is on the corner on your right.
5. Take the second turning on your left.
6. Go straight ahead to the stop sign, and then walk two blocks.
7. In that case, you can take a taxi to the Summer Palace.
8. Go to the traffic lights and then ask a policeman.
9. Which direction is it to the shopping center?
10. It'll take you no more than 5 minutes to walk there.

〔英译汉:〕

1. It's a long drive from here to the airport.
2. Could you tell me where the nearest petrol station is?
3. Could you tell me the way to the mall?
4. Shall I turn left to get to the subway?
5. Excuse me. Where can I get a taxi?
6. Go that way for one block, then turn right.
7. You can't miss it.
8. Which direction is it to the zoo?
9. You should change lines at the bus stop.
10. You can go ahead for two blocks and ask again.

(英译汉答案:)

1. 从这儿到机场得开车走很长时间。
2. 请问最近的加油站在哪儿?
3. 请问去购物城怎么走?
4. 去地铁是往左拐吗?
5. 劳驾, 请问哪里有出租车?
6. 往那边走, 过一个街区, 然后向右拐。
7. 你不会找不到的。
8. 去动物园朝哪个方向走?
9. 你应该在汽车站换车。
10. 往前走两个街区, 然后再问一下。

4. Extra reading 的目的为锻炼学生的独立阅读能力。教师宜在课上限时完成, 可提出简短的问题让学生口头回答。书中的理解性练习可留给学生自己课后完成。

5. Passage B 为主课文A的补充短文, 分别设有阅读理解和句型翻译套写两项练习, 其中的重要词汇注释如下:

Passage B的重要词汇注释如下

destination *n.* 目的地

e.g. He tried his best to run to the final destination.
他竭尽全力冲向终点。

development *n.* 发展; 开发

e.g. The development of tourist industry in this province will take several years.
这个省旅游工业的发展要经过几年的时间。

display *v.* 展示; 陈列

e.g. The children are going to display their paintings on the wall.
孩子们要把他们的绘画挂在墙上展示出来。

screen *n.* 荧屏

e.g. She always spends hours staring at the TV screen.
她总是花上数小时观看电视节目。

sigh *n.* 叹息

e.g. "I wish I had the same opportunity," she said with a sigh.
“我希望我也有这样的好机会,” 她叹了口气说。

terrible *a.* 可怕的

e.g. He had a terrible time at the party.
他在晚会上过得极不愉快。

accompany *v.* 陪伴

e.g. She went to Europe accompanied by her colleague.
她和她的同事一起去了欧洲。

block *n.* 楼; 区段

e.g. There stands an office block.
那里耸立着一栋办公大楼。
Go straight on and then turn left after two blocks.
一直走, 走过两个街区后往左拐。

busily *ad.* 忙碌地

e.g. All the students are preparing their lessons busily.
所有的学生都在忙碌地准备功课。

citizen *n.* 市民; 公民

e.g. She's an American citizen but lives in China.
她是美国公民, 但居住在中国。

economy *n.* 经济; 节约 *a.* 便宜的; 经济实惠的

e.g. People are having an economy drive to help poor children.
人们正在开展一次节约运动去帮助贫困的孩子们。
I'd like an economy class.
我要经济舱。

fellow *n.* 同伴; 朋友

e.g. You can talk with your fellow classmates in English.
你可以和同学们用英语交谈。

hotel *n.* 旅馆

e.g. It is the only hotel in this city.
这是城里唯一的一家旅馆。

impress *v.* 使留下印象

e.g. I was impressed by the diligent girl.
这个勤奋的姑娘给我留下了深刻的印象。

improve *v.* 改良; 改善

e.g. These cars are improved to suit the new demands.
这些汽车已经改良用以满足新的需求。

industry *n.* 工业

e.g. This city is famous for its heavy industry.
这个城市以其重工业而闻名。

interpreter *n.* 口译员

e.g. His spoken English is so good that he can work as an interpreter for us.
他的英语口语非常好, 完全能为我们做翻译。

6. 本课的Applied Writing 为英语室外标牌和路牌的基本写作格式, 应提醒学生们注意: 1) 标牌上的英文字经常全部用大写, 不用句号; 2) 标牌上的字数很少, 一般不超过10个词, 最少的只有1个词; 3) 一般将冠词省略; 4) 一般使用非常正式的词语; 5) 有时使用祈使句。

7. 本课的Pick Up Your Grammar 为复习形容词、名词作前定语, 可参见《英语拓展教程2》语法附录I-7。教师还可根据学生的实际水平补充少量短句进行口头语法练习。



VI. 练习答案 (Key to Exercises)

Key to Integrated Skills Development

- ① 1. He was going back to the harbor.
2. About fifteen minutes.
3. No. 2 and No. 15 buses would take him back to the harbor.
4. Because he was puzzled how to get back to his hotel.
5. No, it was too complicated for him.
6. He suggested that Mr. Green take a taxi from the opposite side of the street.
- ② 1. Boston
2. that was their first trip away from home
3. its historic places
4. a stranger
5. Go three blocks and turn to your left. You can't miss it
6. the church wasn't there
7. Go three blocks and turn to your left. You can't miss it
8. everything in Boston was three blocks and a left turn away
9. the same as they heard from the local people
- ④ 1. Excuse me 2. Of course 3. get there
4. Walk to 5. a left turn 6. two blocks
7. traffic lights 8. looking for 9. to the right
10. very much
- ⑤ (Open)
- ⑥ 1. e 2. d 3. g 4. b 5. a 6. h
7. j 8. f 9. i 10. c 11. l 12. k
- ⑦ 1. stranger 2. on her way 3. lost
4. how 5. go straight on 6. church

7. blocks 8. turning 9. the stop sign
10. over there
- 8 1. Excuse me, officer. How can I get to the bank?
2. Keep walking for two blocks to the corner.
3. He got lost and felt very frightened.
4. She still feels puzzled as to how to get to the railway station.
5. The post office is just over there.
6. It is a good idea to go by plane.
7. In that case, you may go to ask the policeman for help.
8. Are there traffic lights nearby?
- 9 1. a. 那是我第一次离开父母, 我很想见识一下滨海城的著名海滨。
b. That was his first chance to be overseas and he'd like to see something of America's West.
c. That is our first trip away from campus and we want to feel something of the countryside.
2. a. 这一次我们终于见到了老板, 但心里嘀咕是否每次这位老板都得找些不见顾客的借口。
b. This time he entered the final, but he wondered if everybody in the team had to try that hard.
c. This time the girl won the game, but she wondered if girls were really not as capable as boys.
- 10 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. F 6. T 7. F 8. F
- 11 1. c 2. d 3. b 4. d 5. a
- 12 1. a. 他好像对世界各地发生的事情都知道。
b. It seems like we are traveling in a foreign country.
c. It seems like they've forgotten the promises they have made.
2. a. 像头疼、健忘等症状经常发生在工作面临很大压力的人身上。
b. These problems often happen to children from poor families who quit school.
c. This sort of problem often happens to people who worry too much about safety.
3. a. 随着快餐业的发展, 人们的饮食习惯变得简单又快捷。
b. With the development of our business, our products are becoming popular.
c. With the development of world economy and trade, people have many chances to deal with people from different cultural backgrounds.
4. a. 这本书能教我们如何适应日益变化的社会。
b. This kind of new software can help us analyze the complicated figures.
c. This map shows us how to get to the shopping mall.

Key to Applied Writing

Sample 1

入口

出口

Sample 2

私人花园

请勿在此宿营

请勿在此烧烤

请勿践踏草坪

Key to Pick Up Your Grammar

1. There is a petrol/gas station on the corner.
2. The big supermarket is in Shanghai Street.
3. You may wait for us at the traffic lights.
4. First take the right turn and then take the left.
5. The bank is a tall white building.
6. You will see a lovely little girl.
7. He prefers the traditional Chinese medicine.
8. The poor town has developed into a modern city.



VII. 课文参考译文 (Text Translation for Reference)

对话 A: 到港口怎么走?

一位外国水手马克,到市内买了些东西后准备返回船上去。可是他迷路了,怎么也找不到回港口的路了。

马克: 劳驾,请问到港口怎么走?

男子: 一直向前走到停车牌处。也就是右侧第二个拐弯处。停车牌就在拐角处。在停车牌处向右拐,就到了北京街。向前走几分钟,再在下一个拐角处向左拐,客运码头就在前面,你的正前方。

马克: 让我重复一下。第二个右转弯,下一个左转弯。还有,需要多长时间才能到达那里?

男子: 大约15分钟。

马克: 有公共汽车开到那里吗?

男子: 有的。可是你得换车。首先你得乘2路公共汽车到火车站。

马克: 在哪里换车?

男子: 在火车站,换乘15路公共汽车,就可以直接到港口了。

马克: 谢谢,非常感谢。

对话 B: 到国际饭店怎么走?

格林先生是一位从美国来的旅游者。他逛了一会就迷路了, 不知如何回到自己住的酒店。

格林: 劳驾, 警官先生。您能够帮助我吗?

警察: 当然。

格林: 国际饭店在哪里?

警察: 喔, 国际饭店要走那条路。请看这张地图。你现在在天津街。

格林: 是的, 我怎么能够回到饭店去?

警察: 你应该沿这条路向下走两个街区, 在第二个街口交通灯处向右拐, 然后你会看到一个加油站。饭店就在那里, 在右侧。

格林: 唉, 对不起, 太复杂了。

警察: 如果是这样的话, 你可以在马路对面乘出租车。

格林: 这是个好主意。谢谢。

警察: 不用谢。

短文 A: 你不会找不到的

去年夏天, 我和我弟弟同几个朋友在波士顿待了一个星期。那是我们头一次离家旅行, 我们想看看波士顿的一些历史名胜。一天早晨, 我们出发去寻找一座著名的教堂。我们拦住一个过路人问道, “到老北教堂怎么走?” “过三个街区, 向左拐,” 他回答说, “你们不会找不到的。” 于是, 我们走了三个街区, 又向左拐, 可是那里没有教堂。然后, 我们又问了第二个过路人。他回答说, “过三个街区, 向左拐。你们不会找不到的。” 可是, 我们又没有找到那座教堂。最后, 我们问了第三个过路人。“走三个街区, 向左拐。你们不会找不到的。” 这一次, 我们找到了这座教堂, 但是我们在想, 是不是波士顿的一切地方都是要过三个街区, 然后向左拐。就在这时, 一个人向我们走来并问道: “劳驾, 能告诉我邮局在哪里吗?” “过三个街区, 向左拐,” 我的弟弟回答道, “你不会找不到的。”

短文 B: 可以指路的车

你是否有过这样的经历? 你来到一个陌生的城市, 天色已晚, 而且你也非常疲劳。但是, 你却找不到事先已经预订好的旅馆。你深深地叹了一口气, 仿佛是在做噩梦一般。这到底是怎么回事?

这种情况经常发生在开车旅行的人身上, 但这种事可能会成为过去。新型的汽车电脑将被设计出来。这种汽车会告诉你如何抵达目的地。你车上的电脑小荧幕会显示出该城市的地图并且指出你所在的位置。只要将你要去的旅馆名称输入电脑, 你就能在地图上看到。最棒的是, 你开车时会有声音为你指路。有一辆像这样的车子, 你还奢望什么?

Unit 12

The Changes in My Hometown



I. 教学时间分配 (Time Allocation)

本单元共需4~5学时，对话1学时；课文A及练习2~3学时，课文B、语法等1学时（教师可根据本课内容的难易程度稍作增减）。Extra reading的目的为锻炼学生的独立阅读能力。教师宜在课上限时完成，可提出简短的问题让学生口头回答，书中的理解性练习可留给学生自己课后完成。



II. 教学目的与要求 (Aims and Requirements)

I 内容重点 (Language Focus)

1. 交际重点 (Communicative Focus)

介绍并描述某一地方的变迁；介绍并描述某一方位。

2. 重点训练单词和词组 (Focal Words and Expressions)

birthplace, childhood, delighted, enjoyable, eventually, exhausted, huge, hurry, lounge, mist, nephew, picnic, sink

3. 重点句型和习惯表达法 (Focal Functions and Patterns)

- 1) I used to travel along this road to school every day.
- 2) I used to live in Changchun when I was young.
- 3) There didn't use to be a flyover here.
- 4) My family used to have a picnic there.
- 5) I didn't use to have time to read a lot.
- 6) I thought you'd lived in Newtown all your life.
- 7) Have you ever been back since you first left Changchun?
- 8) I've never been there.
- 9) Did you often go there when you were a boy?
- 10) You must have been there.
- 11) The bus station didn't use to be here, next to the town hall.
- 12) The bus station's been here all the time.
- 13) I never used to come here to catch the bus.
- 14) I often thought about visiting my birthplace.
- 15) We're coming into the city center of Changchun now, aren't we?
- 16) Are they some office blocks?
- 17) I would have gone if there was one then.

II 技能要求 (Skills Development)

1 听说 (Listening and Speaking)

能听懂并用英语进行有关介绍某一地方变迁的对话。

2 读译 (Reading and Translating)

能读懂、翻译有关描述某一地方的小短文。

3 写 (Applied Writing)

- A. 能使用所学的单词、词组、句型和语法写出有关环境变迁并描述某一地方的英语句子。
- B. 模拟套写英文路标、路牌。



III. 背景资料 (Background Information)

1 Two More Sample Passages

My Hometown

My hometown is a little town in West China. Its population is 600 000. It stands beside a wide river at the foot of low green hills. It is a very beautiful place. Wherever you go, you may find trees and flowers around you.

But it has not always been like that. When I was young, it was a sad, dirty, muddy, and poor little town. There were no tall buildings, no supermarkets, no cinemas, no theatres, no concert halls, no factories, even not a single power plant. Of course, no VCD, no Karaoke, no Internet, no mobile phones (移动电话)! We were quite used to power cuts. We used to keep several candles in case there was a power cut. At that time it was hard to buy candles because of short supply. Fruits were rare then. For example, I often heard of mango (芒果), but I had never seen a real one. Most people lived in dark, unhealthy, narrow houses. Nearly everyone was very poor and was living a hard life.

Great changes have taken place in my hometown since 1978 when China started to put into effect the policies of reform and opening to the outside world. New factories, new schools, new parks, new cinemas and new flyovers have been set up. The old broken houses have been replaced (代替) by tall apartment buildings. The streets are lined with shops, supermarkets and malls. Nearly every household is equipped with its own telephone, color TV, washing-machine, VCD player, fridge, electric fan, and so on. We can buy almost every kind of fruit in the market. Our living standard has improved greatly. My hometown has taken on a new look. Now the people there are living a happy life. I love my hometown! I love its people! With the development of the West in China, my hometown will have an even brighter future in the 21st century!

2

Xi'an Has Taken on a New Look

Xi'an, formerly known as Chang-an, is an ancient city in central China and the capital of Shaanxi Province. Its population is 7 160 000 (2003). It's located about 1 200 km southwest of Beijing at the foot of the Qinling Mountain range along the Wei River. The major industries are the manufacturing of machines, electrical equipment, and textiles.

Within it are the Shaanxi Provincial Museum and the 14th-century Bell Tower and Drum Tower. Among numerous other historical sites are the Little Goose Pagoda and the Big Goose Pagoda and Temple of Great Good Will. East of Xi'an is the grave complex of Qin Shihuang, the founder of the Qin Dynasty, which is guarded by thousands of life-size clay soldiers and

horses.

Xi'an has a thriving tourist business, attracting archaeologists from every corner of the globe, and it also is building a diversified economy. There are several major universities in Xi'an as well as art and trade schools.

Great changes have taken place in Xi'an since 1978. With the development of the West in China, the ancient city will have an even brighter future in the 21st century.



IV. 语言点 (Language Points)

1 课文补充注释 (Notes to Dialogues and Passage A)

1. My hometown

我的家乡

hometown 属于英语构词法中的“合成法”(Composition)。合成法(合词法)是把两个或两个以上的词按照一定的次序排列构成新词的方法。用这种方法构成的新词叫做复合词(Compound)。复合词之间有的要用连字符,有的直接连在一起,如:

(1) 名词:

after + noon—afternoon 下午

air + line—airline 航空公司

air + way—airway 航路

basket + ball—basketball 篮球

bath + room—bathroom 浴室

birth + place—birthplace 出生地

black + board—blackboard 黑板

book + store—bookstore 书店

chop + sticks—chopsticks 筷子

e + mail—email 电子邮件

get + together—get-together 联欢会

head + master—head-master 校长

home + work—homework 家庭作业

home + town—hometown 家乡, 故乡

love + seat—loveseat 双人沙发

loud + speaker—loudspeaker 喇叭

main + land—mainland 大陆

news + paper—newspaper 报纸

rail + road—railroad (美)铁路, 铁道

rail + way—railway (英) 铁路, 铁道

sales + girl—salesgirl 女售货员

sales + man—salesman 男售货员

sales + person—salesperson 售货员

sea + cucumber—sea-cucumber 海参

sun + shine—sunshine 阳光

sweat + shirt—sweatshirt 运动衫

(2) 形容词

first + rate—first-rate 一流的, 头等的

long + distance—long-distance 长途的, 远距离的

open + air—open-air 户外的, 露天的

old + fashioned—old-fashioned 过时的, 老式的

part + time—part-time 业余的, 兼职的

round + trip—round-trip 来回的, 往返的

2. He is now returning to Changchun for the first time in twenty years and is traveling by bus with his nephew Robert.

这是他20年来首次返回长春,正在同他的侄子罗伯特乘公共汽车环城旅游。

for the first time 第一次(作状语)

e.g. For the first time he heard of the word “modem.”

他第一次听到“猫”(调制解调节器)这个词。

For the first time in her life she knew how vast the world is.

她一生中第一次意识到世界竟然如此之大。

3. It's all coming back to me now.

过去的一切都回到面前了。

come back to sb 回想起来

e.g. Their names are all coming back to me now.

他们的名字我现在渐渐地都想起来了。

At first I could not remember why everything seemed so familiar; then it all came back.

起初我一下子想不起来为什么这一切都如此熟悉,随后慢慢地都想起来了。

4. I used to travel along this road to school every day.

我过去每天都走这条路去上学。

used to + V表示“过去常常”、“过去习惯于”,是情态动词,只有过去式形式,没有现在式形式,表示过去习惯的行为或状态现已不复存在。

e.g. They used to come on foot, but they don't do that now. They often come by bus.

他们过去经常步行来,现在不了。他们现在经常乘车来。

He used to smoke a lot, but he has long given up smoking. He doesn't smoke at all.

以前他抽烟抽得很凶,不过他早已戒烟了。现在他不抽了。

used to 疑问式和否定式通常用didn't use to 或 usedn't to, 但后者用得较少:

e.g. Did you use to have time to read a lot?

Used you to have time to read a lot?

你过去有时间读很多书吗?

I didn't use to have time to read a lot.

我过去没有时间读很多书。

Did there use to be a flyover here?

Used there to be a flyover here?

这里过去有立交桥吗?

There didn't use to be a flyover here.

这里过去没有立交桥。

比较: used to 与 be used to

used to 后接动词原形, 即上面的用法; 而 be used to 则表示“习惯于”, 其中 to 是介词, 后接名词或代词。

e.g. The old woman used to be rich and beautiful, but now she is poor and ugly.

这位老妇人过去富有而漂亮, 不过现在又穷又丑。

Are you used to the food at college?

你能吃得惯学校的饭菜么?

He was used to the cold weather after he lived there for two years.

在那里住了2年后, 他已习惯了寒冷的天气。

5. I thought you'd lived in Newtown all your life.

我以为你一生都住在新城。

sb thought + sb had + p.p. (动词过去分词) 表示“原以为…其实不然”, 这种推测的结果往往与说话人主观推测相反。

e.g. I thought you'd done your homework.

我以为你的作业写完了呢。(其实没写完)

We thought they'd returned.

我们以为他们回来了。(事实上没有回来)

6. Have you ever been back since you first left Changchun?

你第一次离开长春后回来过吗?

比较: have been to some place

曾经去这某地(表示经历)

have gone to some place

去了某地(表示事实)

当谈论某人的经历时用前者, 谈某人的去向时用后者。

e.g. Have you ever been to Japan?

你去过日本吗?(经历)

Mr. Wang has gone to Japan.

王先生已经去了日本了。(去向)

7. In fact, I never made it because I had no time.

事实上，由于没有时间，我从未回来过。

make it 表示“按时到达某地，成功”。

e.g. The train goes at 10:45, and it's now 10 o'clock. I think we shall make it.

火车10:45发车，现在是10点钟，我想我们能赶上。

After years as an unsuccessful businessman he's finally made it.

经过多年的失败，他终于成了一名实业家。

8. You must have been there.

你肯定去过那里。

must + 完成时，表示对过去的推测“一定…”。

e.g. They must have gone.

他们一定走了。

There must have been a mistake.

一定出了问题。

9. Let's get off and look around ...

我们下车逛逛吧！

get off 下车

e.g. He got off his bike and went into the house.

他下了自行车，走进了房子。

The bus stopped and they got off.

汽车停了，他们下了车。

get on 上车（船等）

e.g. They got on the plane at Beijing.

他们在北京上了飞机。

Where did you get on?

你在哪儿上车？

10. It says 1955.

是1955年。

say 指文字材料时，表示“写道，说”。

e.g. What did the fax say?

传真上怎么写的？

Her passport says that she is nineteen.

护照上写着她19岁。

11. The conference was to take place in Geneva.

会议将在日内瓦举行。

be to do 是一种将来时间的表达方法，表示客观安排要发生的事。

e.g. Am I to go on with the work?

我是不是要继续干下去？

She is to come here at 8 p.m.

她8点会来这里。

The Queen is to visit Japan next year.

明年女王要访问日本。

12. Jim thought that it would be an opportunity to take his fiancée Mary on a short holiday.

吉姆心想这是带未婚妻玛丽度短假的好机会。

此句中主句用的是过去时“Jim thought”，因此从句中用了过去将来时“it would be”，从过去的角度看将来。“fiancée”源自法语，意为“未婚妻”，它的对应词是 fiancé “未婚夫”。

13. They decided to go to Paris for a week before Jim traveled on to Geneva.

他们决定先去巴黎待一星期，然后吉姆去日内瓦开会。

此句中 before 引导一个时间状语从句，意为“在…之前”，在翻译类似的句子时应按照汉语的习惯灵活处理。如：

We had scarcely got in all the clothes before it began to rain.

我们刚把衣服收进来天就下雨了。

You should complete the task before you leave for holiday.

你应该先完成工作，然后再去度假。

We have to finish the work before it is too late.

我们得趁早完成这项工作。

14. While he was waiting in the lounge for his plane to Geneva, a mist began to form.

就在他在候机大厅等候飞往日内瓦的班机时，天起雾了。

while 引导一个时间状语从句，表示一个与主句动作同时发生的持续性动作或状态。如：

While he was parking, a policeman walked towards him.

当他正在停车的时候，一位警察向他走来。

Write while I dictate.

当我口述时请你记下。

While I read, she sang.

我看书时，她在唱歌。

I met her while I was at school.

我在上学的时候遇见了她。

15. The pilot radioed his destination and was told that his plane had to return to Paris.

飞行员和目的地联络上后，被告知飞机必须返回巴黎着陆。

But poor Jim was fogged as if he were still asleep.

而可怜的吉姆脑子里却是一片云遮雾罩，就好像还在睡梦之中。

以上两句中的谓语动词 radioed 和 fogged 均由名词转换而来，radio 由原意“无线电、收音机”转换为“用无线电发报联系”；fog 由原意“雾”转换为“云遮雾罩”，类似的词还有：

- book** *n.* 书; 卷; 篇; 名册 → *v.* 登记; 预订
 e.g. I've booked a room in the hotel.
 我已经在旅馆中订了一个房间。
- cook** *n.* 厨师 → *v.* 烹调; 煮
 e.g. My mother has cooked the best food for us.
 母亲已为我们做好了最美味的饭菜。
- elbow** *n.* 肘 → *v.* to open up by use of the elbow 以肘打开一条通道
 e.g. She elbowed her way through the crowd.
 她从人群中挤过去。
- hand** *n.* 手 → *v.* 支持; 搀扶; 交给
 e.g. Please hand in your homework tomorrow.
 请明天交作业。
- head** *n.* 头 → *v.* 为首; 领导; 朝...进发
 e.g. The bus headed the line of cars.
 公共汽车开在一列小汽车的前头。
 Who headed the department?
 谁主管着这个部门?
 Tom headed the ball into his own goal.
 汤姆把球顶进了自家的球门。
 We're heading home.
 我们正在朝家走。
- water** *n.* 水 → *v.* 喷淋; 加水; 流泪; 流口水
 e.g. She is watering the flowers in the garden.
 她正在花园中给花浇水。
 The wonderful aroma from the kitchen makes my mouth water.
 厨房飘来的香味使我垂涎三尺。
 The milk has been watered (down).
 牛奶已掺水了。

III 词汇用法 (Word Usage)

- birthplace** *n.* house or district where a person was born 出生处, 出生地
 e.g. Tom's birthplace is London.
 汤姆生于伦敦。
 Where is your birthplace?
 哪里是你的出生地?
- childhood** *n.* condition or period of being a child 童年; 幼年时代
 e.g. He will never forget the joys of childhood.
 他永远不会忘记童年的快乐。

She had an unhappy childhood.

她的童年很不幸。

delighted *a.* filled with joy and happiness 充满欢乐的；高兴的

e.g. My parents are so delighted with the news.

我的父母为这个消息感到欢喜鼓舞。

I was delighted to be invited to her party.

我很高兴被邀请参加她的晚会。

enjoyable *a.* being able to give pleasure or satisfaction 令人愉快的；有趣的；可享受的

e.g. This is such an enjoyable dinner party.

这是一个如此令人享受的晚餐会。

It is so enjoyable to talk with her.

和她说话真是令人愉快。

eventually *ad.* at an unspecified future time 最后；最终

e.g. The doctor worked so hard that eventually he made himself ill.

这位医生工作太卖力，最后自己病倒了。

Tom eventually rose to the position of vice president.

汤姆最终升到了副总裁的职位。

exhausted *a.* having consumed all the energy, too tired 耗尽的；疲惫的

e.g. We are all exhausted after the journey.

这次旅行后我们都筋疲力尽了。

My patience is exhausted.

我无法忍耐了。

huge *a.* very large in size or amount; enormous 极大的；巨大的

e.g. Every day she has a huge pile of letters to deal with.

她每天得处理大量的信件。

China is a huge country.

中国是一个幅员辽阔的国家。

hurry *n.* the act or an instance of hurrying; hastened progress 急忙；仓促

v. to (cause to) move or act with speed 催促；匆忙；仓促行动

e.g. You always seem to be in a hurry.

你似乎总是很匆忙。

I'm not in a/hurry to change my job.

我并不急于想调工作。

What's the hurry?

干吗这么急？

I hurried to the ticket office to buy the tickets.

我急忙赶到售票处买票。

Doctors and nurses were hurried to the accident spot.

医生和护士急忙赶到事故现场/出事地点。

Perhaps you've got to hurry the child to school, or he'll be late.

可能你得催促孩子去上学，不然他要迟到了。

lounge *n.* a public waiting room; a lobby 公共休息室；等候室，大厅

e.g. Please wait for me at the lounge in the hotel.

在宾馆的大厅里等我。

mist *n.* thin fog 薄雾

v. to be or become obscured or blurred by or as if by mist 变得模糊；仿佛被雾弄得模糊的

e.g. I like the mist by the lake early in the morning.

我喜欢清晨湖边的薄雾。

We couldn't see through the mist whether there was a ship.

我们无法透过薄雾看清楚是否有一艘船。

She looked at her hometown through the mist of her tears.

她透过模糊的泪水凝视着家乡。

nephew *n.* son of one's brother or sister 侄子，外甥

e.g. Mr. Smith often gives some pocket money to his nephew.

史密斯先生经常给侄子零花钱。

Robert and his nephew visited China last year.

罗伯特和侄子去年访问过中国。

picnic *n.* pleasure trip on which food is carried to be eaten outdoors 野餐

e.g. They are going for a picnic tomorrow.

他们明天去野餐。

We'll go to the river and take a picnic with us.

我们要到河边玩耍，并带着野餐。

sink *v.* to descend to the bottom or fall/drop to a lower level; to pass into a specified condition

淹没，下沉；沉没

n. a water basin fixed to a wall or floor 水槽，水池

e.g. She was exhausted and sank into a deep sleep.

她太累了，已经进入了梦乡。

His voice sank to a whisper.

他的声音减弱成耳语。

The water is sinking into the ground.

水正渗入地下。

Let us sink our differences and work together.

让我们忘记我们的分歧而共同工作。

The lucky thing is we have a sink in our small bedroom.

幸运的是在我们的小卧室中有个盥洗池。



V. 练习指导及补充练习 (Guide to Exercises and Supplementary Exercises)

1. Check your understanding 目的是为了检查学生对有关对话及短文的理解。教师应该注意引导学生用自己的话来回答。教师亦可根据对话与短文作出一些补充练习。

补充练习如下:

For Dialogue A

Are the following statements true (T) or false (F) according to Dialogue A?

- 1) Mr. Hall spent his childhood in Changsha.
- 2) He hasn't been back in the last twenty years.
- 3) He returned to his birthplace with his secretary.
- 4) Mr. Hall has lived in Newtown all his life.
- 5) He has never visited Changchun since he first left.
- 6) There usedn't to be a flyover.

答案:

- 1) F 2) T 3) F 4) F 5) T 6) T

For Dialogue B

Answer the following questions briefly according to Dialogue B.

- 1) Used there to be a swimming pool near the town center? (No, there usedn't.)
- 2) Did Mr. Hall use to go swimming there? (No, he didn't use to.)
- 3) Sometimes Mr. Hall went to the town library when he was young, didn't he? (Yes, he did.)
- 4) The bus station didn't use to be next to the town hall, did it? (Yes, it used to be there.)
- 5) Why can't Mr. Hall remember the bus station? (Because it's all changed.)

2. Learn to communicate 的目的为巩固并扩展本课所学的谈论某地变化的用语。教师要引导学生在课上创造更多的语境进行实际交际训练。在口语中常见的句子还有:

- 1) Beijing is the capital of the People's Republic of China.
- 2) It is located at the northwestern border of the North China Plain about 145 km from the Bohai.
- 3) It covers an area of about 16 800 sq.km.
- 4) The Yongding River passes through the city.
- 5) It has many historic places.
- 6) Beijing is divided into several urban districts.
- 7) But it is not always like that in Beijing.

- 8) It used to be poor and backward.
- 9) Great changes have taken place in the city since 1978.
- 10) Led by the Party, we have got rid of poverty.
- 11) It takes on a new look.
- 12) Many skyscrapers have sprung up.
- 13) Wherever you go, you may find trees and flowers around you.
- 14) Modern industries have developed rapidly in Beijing since 1949.
- 15) As the national capital, Beijing is the focal point of communications and transportation in China.
- 16) Beijing is China's leading center of learning and culture.
- 17) Beijing University and Qinghua University are the two most respected universities in China.
- 18) I love Beijing, and I love its people.
- 19) We are proud of living in Beijing.
- 20) I'm sure that Beijing will have an even brighter future.

3. Build up your language stock 的目的是进一步巩固本课所学单词和短语。练习9 (句型套用) 是为学生学习掌握本课重要句型专门补充编写的, 这种句型套用练习可引导学生深入理解句子结构及其精妙之处, 并在此基础上模拟套用这些句型, 学习效果十分显著。因此教师要作为重点在课上引导学生完成这一练习, 还可要求他们在练习的基础上背诵这些句型。教师还可以增加一些类似的词汇搭配练习和翻译练习。

词汇补充练习:

[汉译英:]

1. 小时候叔叔总是来看我。(used to)
2. 老人渐渐回想起他初中同学们的名字。(come back)
3. 昨晚一定下大雨了。(must)
4. 你去过泰山吗?(have been to)
5. 自从1978年以来中国到处发生了巨大的变化。(take place)
6. 从前, 这位老人住在山脚下的一个小茅屋里。(at the foot of)

[汉译英答案:]

1. My uncle used to come to see me when I was young.
2. The names of his classmates at middle school came back to the old man.
3. It must have rained hard last night.
4. Have you ever been to Mount Tai?
5. Great changes have taken place in all parts of China since 1978.
6. The old men used to live in a hut at the foot of the mountain.

(英译汉:)

1. The park has not always been so beautiful since it was set up.
2. Whenever you go, you'll see the great changes taking place everywhere.
3. The builders worked day and night so as to finish the project ahead of time.
4. I would have gone to read a lot in the library if there was one there.
5. China is no longer what she used to be.
6. Wang Hua has gone to California and hasn't come back yet.
7. They have put up many skyscrapers along the main street.
8. Beijing has been the capital city for many years.

(英译汉答案:)

1. 这座公园建成以来并不一直是这样美丽。
2. 无论走到哪里, 你到处可以看到正在发生的巨大变化。
3. 为了提前完工, 建筑工人们夜以继日地工作着。
4. 那时要是图书馆的话, 我会去那儿看许多书的。
5. 旧中国一去不复返了。
6. 王华去加利福尼亚了, 还没有回来。
7. 他们沿着大街建起了许多摩天大楼。
8. 北京作为首都城市已有许多年了。

4. Extra reading 的目的为锻炼学生的独立阅读能力。教师宜在课上限时完成, 可提出简短的问题让学生口头回答, 书中的理解性练习可留给学生自己课后完成。

5. Passage B 为主课文A的补充短文, 分别设有阅读理解和句型翻译套写两项练习, 其中的重要词汇注释如下:

Passage B的重要词汇注释如下

living *n.* 生活

e.g. How could the poor student afford the high cost of living?

那个穷学生怎么能付得起那么昂贵的生活费呢?

People's living condition has been improved greatly.

人民的生活状况已经得到很大的改善。

rapidly *ad.* 快速地

e.g. The dog caught up with the hare rapidly.

狗快速地追赶上了野兔。

rid *v.* 免除

e.g. He was finally able to rid himself of all the trouble.
他终于能使自己摆脱所有的麻烦。

spring *v.* 跳; 快速发展 *n.* 春天

e.g. She sprang out of her chair to greet her old friend.
她从椅子上跳起来迎接她的老朋友。
The spring is coming.
春天即将来临。

standard *n.* 标准; 规格

e.g. The standard of living in this city is improving continuously.
这个城市的生活水平在不断提高。

steadily *ad.* 稳定地

e.g. The students are progressing steadily.
学生们在稳定地进步着。

steamer *n.* 汽船

e.g. Do you know who designed the steamer?
你知道是谁设计的汽船吗?

theater *n.* 戏院

e.g. A new play will be put on in this theater.
这家戏院即将上演一部新剧。

unemployed *a.* 失业的

e.g. He has been unemployed for two years.
他已经失业两年了。

6. 本课的Applied Writing 为套写路标和路牌, 学生应记住常用固定的语言格式和专门用语。

7. 本课的Pick Up Your Grammar 为复习介词短语、不定式作后定语, 可参见《英语拓展教程2》语法附录I-7。教师还可根据学生的实际水平补充少量短句进行口头语法练习。



VI. 练习答案 (Key to Exercises)

Key to Integrated Skills Development

1 1. When he was a boy.

2. No, he hasn't.
 3. No, he can't.
 4. There used to be a field.
 5. It is located in the town center.
 6. Because the whole town has changed.
- ② 1. a 2. d 3. d 4. a 5. d 6. c 7. b
- ④ 1. Excuse me. Do you know how to get to the West Avenue?
I see. Thank you very much.
2. Just a minute. Let me see/think.
Go straight on till the crossroads.
3. Go down this street and turn left at the traffic lights.
You'll see the railway station when you get there.
- ⑤ (Open)
- ⑥ 1. conference 2. delighted 3. imagine 4. sank into 5. took off
6. destination 7. had better 8. woke up 9. take place 10. asleep
- ⑦ 1. Mary can't imagine a life without TV.
2. Shanghai is not my destination. I just change the train there.
3. The plane is taking off in an hour. We'd better hurry up.
4. It's nine o'clock. It's impossible to catch this flight.
5. He can't come this afternoon because he has to attend a meeting.
6. The children had fallen asleep when I got home.
- ⑧ 1. 我出生在一个很小的村庄。
2. 我们学校位于不高的青山脚下。
3. 有一条河流过城市。
4. 在市中心，涌现出许多高楼大厦。
5. 他们还在大街两旁建了许多商店和超级市场。
6. 自从我来到这里，这座城市发生了巨大的变化。
7. 这里的人们已摆脱了贫穷，并且过上了幸福而舒适的生活。
- ⑨ 1. a. 我和父母用了整整一个上午筹划我们的假日。
b. The little girl spent a pleasant day decorating the Christmas tree.
c. The two scientists spent a hard year studying the problem.
2. a. 而这个小姑娘的心却得到了温暖，恍如自己的祖母仍然活着。
b. But I was blamed as if I were the trouble-maker.
c. But the old man was pleased as if he were still a young man.
- ⑩ 1. d 2. a 3. c 4. b 5. a 6. c
- ⑪ 1. an interpreter
2. low green hills and a wide river
3. a sad and dirty place, poor
4. have taken place
5. along the river

6. the products of the industries
 7. rapidly and steadily developed economy
 8. cannot wait/is eager
- 12
1. a. 她细心照顾着那个孩子，既当老师又兼母亲。
b. The teacher had a hearty talk with us as a friend as well as an advisor.
c. This dictionary serves the users as a pleasant reader as well as a reference book.
 2. a. 在过去，生活是一种既单调又艰辛的经历。
b. In her mind, her husband used to be a cheerful and hardworking man.
c. In the good old days, my birthplace used to be a beautiful and clean little village.
 3. a. 自20世纪80年代之初，花草树木改善了这座城市的环境。
b. Many tourists have visited the scenic spots since the mid 1990s.
c. Waste gas and waste water have polluted the natural environment here since the beginning of the 21st century.
 4. a. 路上日夜穿梭着汽车和公交车，接送着进出山区的参观者们。
b. On the flyover, vehicles come and go rain or shine, easing the crowded road in the downtown area.
c. On the Internet, emails and ads are sent and received frequently home and abroad, exchanging information among the users.

Key to Applied Writing

- | | |
|-------------|-----------|
| 1. 禁止所有车辆通行 | 2. 不要践踏草坪 |
| 3. 禁止游泳 | 4. 禁止儿童入内 |
| 5. 禁止砍伐树木 | 6. 禁止入内 |
| 7. 请安静 | 8. 禁止吐痰 |
| 9. 不要把头探出窗外 | 10. 勿带包入内 |

Key to Pick Up Your Grammar

1. He always has a lot of meetings to attend.
2. The key to this room was lost.
3. She is a person to rely on.
4. John is a person with no sense of humor at all.
5. They were the first (people) to arrive/come.
6. There is nothing to worry about.
7. We must try to get all the information about the accident.
8. Do you know the girl in a blue dress?



VII. 课文参考译文 (Text Translation for Reference)

对话 A: 回乡探望

霍尔先生的童年是在中国长春度过的。然而，他一生的大部分时间还是住在新城。这是他20年来首次返回长春，正在同他的侄子罗伯特乘公共汽车环城旅游。

霍尔：我们快要到达目的地了。过去的一切都要回到面前了。我过去每天都走这条路去上学。

罗伯特：真的吗？我以为你一生都住在新城。

霍尔：不是的，我年轻的时候在长春。

罗伯特：你第一次离开长春后回来过吗？

霍尔：没有，可是我经常想着回故乡探望。事实上，由于没有时间，我从未回来过。

罗伯特：现在我们正进入长春市中心，对吗？

霍尔：哦——是吗？一切都变了。这里过去没有立交桥的。

罗伯特：你看那些摩天大厦。都是写字楼吗？

霍尔：不知道。我不记得这里有过任何高楼大厦。那里曾经是一片庄稼地——我们全家经常在那里野餐。

对话 B: 一切都变了！

这会儿，霍尔先生和他侄子正乘坐公交车穿越市中心。

罗伯特：你小时候经常到那里去吗？

霍尔：我从未去过那里。要是那时有游泳池的话，我是会来的。

罗伯特：看那座老房子。是市图书馆。你肯定去过那里。

霍尔：哦，是的，但是不常去。我没有那么多时间看书。

罗伯特：啊，我们到了公共汽车站了。

霍尔：什么？公共汽车站以前不在这儿，不是在市政厅附近的。

罗伯特：那时在哪里呢？

霍尔：我记不得了。整个城市都变了。我们下车逛逛吧！你给我读读那上边的日期好吗？

罗伯特：是1955年。公共汽车站一直在这里。

霍尔：我从未来这里乘过车。我什么都记不得了。也许是我变了——不是城市变了。

短文 A: 一次旅行经历

当吉姆应邀参加一个电脑网络的国际会议时，他很高兴。会议将在日内瓦举行。吉姆心想这是带未婚妻玛丽度短假的好机会。他们决定先去巴黎待一星期，然后吉姆去日内瓦开会，玛丽回家。

吉姆和玛丽在巴黎呆了一星期，玩得非常开心。到周末他们都感到筋疲力尽。吉姆陪玛丽来到机场，送她上了飞往伦敦的班机。就在他在候机大厅等候飞往日内瓦的班机时，天起雾了。他的飞机终于在晚点两小时后起飞，吉姆一头扎到座位上就睡着了。

不巧的是，飞机就要到日内瓦时，薄雾变成了大雾。飞行员和目的地联络上后，被告知飞机必须返回巴黎着陆，他立即把这个消息通知给旅客，但是吉姆还在熟睡，等飞机着陆巴黎时他才醒。他迷迷糊糊地急忙走出大厅，惊讶地发现自己又回到了巴黎。这时，雾已经开始消散了，而可怜的吉姆脑子里却是一片云遮雾罩，就好像还在睡梦之中。

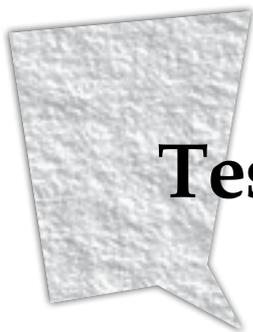
短文 B: 家乡旧貌换新颜

我的一个来自新西兰的朋友，约翰·史密斯，要去我家乡看看。我将陪他一起去，既当翻译又兼导游。我离开家乡好多年了，归心似箭。

我的家乡位于一片葱郁的小山脚下，一条宽宽的河流旁。在我的记忆中，它是一个既萧瑟又肮脏的小镇。那儿的人大多很穷，许多人没有工作。

20世纪70年代末期之后，我的家乡发生了巨大的变化。家乡人已经摆脱了旧面貌。他们在镇中心建起了图书馆、戏院和商店。他们还在镇东建起了一座医院，沿河建起了公寓楼、旅馆和一个大大的公园。旅游业与商业蓬勃兴起。河上日夜穿梭着大大小小的轮船和木船，把我家乡的工业产品运往全省各地。随着经济平稳高速地发展，人们的生活水平也大大提高了。我相信我家乡的新面貌会给约翰留下深刻的印象。

高等教育出版社



Test 2 (Unit 7 — Unit 12)



Scripts:

Part I Listening Comprehension

Section A

Directions: *This section is to test your ability to give proper answers to questions. There are 5 recorded questions in it. After each question, there is a pause. The questions will be spoken twice. When you hear a question, you should decide on the correct answer from the 4 choices marked A, B, C and D given in your test paper.*

1. Isn't your car blue?
2. Is this seat taken, please?
3. Is the weather pleasant in your hometown?
4. Why don't we have dinner together this weekend?
5. Would you like a glass of apple juice or orange juice?

Section B

Directions: *This section is to test your ability to understand short dialogues. There are 5 recorded dialogues in it. After each dialogue, there is a recorded question. Both the dialogue and the question will be spoken twice. When you hear a question, you should decide on the correct answer from the 4 choices marked A, B, C and D given in your test paper.*

6. W: If the traffic had not been so bad, I might have come to the office by 8.
M: It's too bad you didn't make it. Nancy called about the meeting tomorrow.
Q: What happened to the woman?
7. M: How did the party go, Carol?
W: Of the 20 invited, 12 people turned up, but half left early.
Q: What can we learn about the party?
8. M: I hope my uncle can lend me some money when I am short of it.

- W: As far as I know, he refuses anyone who asks for money.
 Q: What does the woman imply?
9. W: Is Maggie happy in her new job?
 M: All I know is that I have never seen her happier.
 Q: What does the man mean?
10. M: How much does the suitcase cost?
 W: Originally it was \$50, but now it's on sale, you can have it for \$45.
 M: But all I have with me is \$30.
 Q: How much is the man short of now to buy the suitcase?

Section C

Directions: *In this section, you will hear a recorded short passage. The passage is printed in the test paper, but with some words or phrases missing. The passage will be read three times. During the second reading, you are required to put in the missing words or phrases. The third reading is for you to check your writing. Now the passage will begin.*

The police received a report that six men had stopped a van. The van was carrying factory wages and the men had attacked the driver. They had tied him up and had stolen one of the bags. After searching for three hours the police found the van near the river. The driver was sitting on a bag in the van and his hands were tied behind his back. The thieves had tied a handkerchief round his mouth so that he wouldn't shout. The police climbed into the back of the van and freed the driver. Then he told them that there were two bags in the back, and the thieves took one of them. But it didn't contain any money at all. It was full of letters. The one the driver had been sitting on for three hours contained all the money.

Key to Test Two (Unit 7 — Unit 12)

Part I Listening Comprehension

Section A

1. D 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. D

Section B

6. A 7. A 8. B 9. B 10. C

Section C

11. wages 12. searching 13. shout 14. freed 15. contain

Part II Vocabulary & Structure

Section A

16. D 17. A 18. C 19. B 20. C

Section B

21. responsibility 22. guidance 23. service 24. wonderful 25. amazed

Part III Reading Comprehension**Task 1**

26. C 27. D 28. B 29. B 30. D

Task 2

31. relief of painful discomforts like headaches or colds
 32. 12 33. fruit juice
 34. a cold 35. at bedtime

Part IV Translation

36. I think I can satisfy your requirements for the job.
 37. We'd like to have you and your wife over for dinner this Saturday evening.
 38. It is getting late, and I'm afraid I'll have to be leaving.
 39. 谢谢您让我们度过了这么美好的一个夜晚。我们玩得真开心。
 40. 旅行社为游客包飞机、预订旅馆房间和饮食。

Part V Writing

Declining an Invitation

Dear Catherine.

I'm sorry I can't come to your dinner Sunday evening. Tony's mother is coming to visit us from Guangzhou, and we are going to meet her at the railway station that evening.

Thanks again for your kind invitation. Best wishes for a happy weekend.

Sincerely yours,

Mary

Mary